

PROJECT MANUAL

**LORIS ELEMENTARY SCHOOL  
MAKEUP AIR UNIT  
REPLACEMENT**

**WBS Project Number: 2109001**

901 SC-9 BUSINESS

LORIS, SC 29569

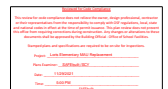
PREPARED BY:

**WHOLE BUILDING SYSTEMS, LLC**

P.O. Box 1845

Mt. Pleasant, SC 29465

Date: November 9, 2021



**HORRY COUNTY SCHOOLS – LORIS ELEMENTARY SCHOOL  
MAU REPLACEMENT**

**SECTION 000100**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**DIVISION 00 PROCUREMENT and CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

**SECTION # TITLE**

SECTION 000101 – PROJECT TITLE PAGE  
SECTION 000102 - TABLE OF CONTENTS  
SECTION 000107 - SEALS PAGE  
SECTION 000115 – LIST OF DRAWINGS

**DIVISION 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY  
SECTION 012100 – ALLOWANCES  
SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES  
SECTION 013100 – PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION  
SECTION 017300 – EXECUTION  
SECTION 017419 – CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL  
SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
SECTION 017823 - OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA  
SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS  
SECTION 017900 – DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

**DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS**

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

**DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION 078413 – PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING  
SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

SECTION 095123 – ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)

SECTION 230513 – COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT  
SECTION 230517 – SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING  
SECTION 230518 – ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING  
SECTION 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
SECTION 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC  
SECTION 230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
SECTION 230593 – TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC  
SECTION 230713 – DUCT INSULATION

SECTION 230719 – HVAC PIPING INSULATION  
SECTION 230923 – DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROLS (DDC) SYSTEMS  
SECTION 231126 – FACILITY LIQUIFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING  
SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS  
SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES  
SECTION 233346 – FLEXIBLE DUCTS  
SECTION 237413 – DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS (DOAS)

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES  
SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 34 - TRANSPORTATION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 35 - WATERWAY AND MARINE CONSTRUCTION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 40 - PROCESS INTEGRATION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 41 - MATERIAL PROCESSING AND HANDLING EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 42 - PROCESS HEATING, COOLING, AND DRYING EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 43 - PROCESS GAS AND LIQUID HANDLING, PURIFICATION AND  
STORAGE EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 44 - POLLUTION CONTROL EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 45 - INDUSTRY-SPECIFIC MANUFACTURING EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 46 - WATER AND WASTEWATER EQUIPMENT

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 48 - ELECTRICAL POWER GENERATION

NOT APPLICABLE

DIVISION 99 - NARRATIVES

NOT APPLICABLE

**DOCUMENT 000107 - SEALS PAGE**



Date: November 9, 2021

## DOCUMENT 000115 - LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

## 1.1 LIST OF DRAWINGS

## A. List of Drawings: Drawings consist of the following Contract Drawings and other drawings of type indicated:

1. G001 – TITLE PAGE DATED: 11/09/2021
2. G002 – OSF FORM F3 DATED: 11/09/2021
3. G003 – SITE SAFETY PLAN DURING CONSTRUCTION DATED: 11/09/2021
4. M001 – HVAC LEGEND, NOTES AND ABBREVIATIONS DATED: 11/09/2021
5. MD101 – HVAC DEMOLITION – AREA ‘A’ DATED: 11/09/2021
6. MD102 – HVAC DEMOLITION – AREA ‘D’ DATED: 11/09/2021
7. MD103 – HVAC DEMOLITION – AREA ‘E’ DATED: 11/09/2021
8. M101 – HVAC NEW WORK – AREA ‘A’ DATED: 11/09/2021
9. M102 – HVAC NEW WORK – AREA ‘B’ DATED: 11/09/2021
10. M103 – HVAC NEW WORK – AREA ‘D’ DATED: 11/09/2021
11. M104 – HVAC NEW WORK – AREA ‘E’ DATED: 11/09/2021
12. M200 – HVAC ELEVATIONS DATED: 11/09/2021
13. M500 – HVAC DETAILS DATED: 11/09/2021
14. M600 – HVAC SCHEDULES DATED: 11/09/2021
15. E001 – ELECTRICAL LEGEND, NOTES AND ABBREVIATIONS DATED:  
11/09/2021
16. ED101 – ELECTRICAL PLAN DEMOLITION DATED: 11/09/2021
17. E101 – ELECTRICAL PLAN NEW WORK DATED: 11/09/2021
18. E600 – EQUIPMENT ELECTRICAL SCHEDULE DATED: 11/09/2021

END OF DOCUMENT 000115

## SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Contract description.
  - 2. Work by Owner or other Work at the Site.
  - 3. Owner-furnished products.
  - 4. Contractor's use of Site and premises.
  - 5. Future work.
  - 6. Work sequence.
  - 7. Owner occupancy.
  - 8. Permits.
  - 9. Specification conventions.

## 1.2 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION

- A. Work of the Project includes construction or alteration per the project drawings.
  - 1. Work is the replacement of existing dedicated outside air mechanical units and associated ductwork.
  - 2. Work associated with ceiling demolition to accomplish HVAC component replacement.
- B. Contract with Owner according to Conditions of Contract.

## 1.3 WORK BY OWNER OR OTHERS

- A. Work associated with the Building Automation System is to be contracted with HCS Contractor and to be paid directly by HCS. Owner will coordinate the sequence of work under all contracts according to "Work Sequence" and "Contractor's Use of Site and Premises" Articles in this Section.
- B. Contractor to coordinate BAS work with Owner, Owner's contractor and contractor's forces.
- C. Work under this Contract includes:
  - 1. Work as indicated on Drawings and as specified in the Project Manual.
- D. Items noted NIC (Not in Contract) will be furnished and installed by Owner.

## 1.4 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Arrange for and deliver Owner-reviewed Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples to Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange and pay for delivery to Site.



3. Upon delivery, inspect products jointly with Contractor.
4. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
5. Arrange for manufacturers' warranties, inspections, and service.

B. Contractor's Responsibilities:

1. Review Owner-reviewed Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.
2. Receive and unload products at Site; inspect for completeness or damage jointly with Owner.
3. Handle, store, install, and finish products.
4. Repair or replace items damaged after receipt.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

A. Limit use of Site and premises to allow:

1. Owner occupancy.
2. Work by Owner.

B. Construction Operations: Limited to areas indicated on Drawings.

1. Noisy and Disruptive Operations (such as Use of Jack Hammers and Other Noisy Equipment): Not allowed in close proximity to existing building during regular hours of operation. Coordinate and schedule such operations with Owner to minimize disruptions.

C. Utility Outages and Shutdown:

1. Coordinate and schedule electrical and other utility outages with Owner.
2. Outages: Allowed only at previously agreed upon times. In general, schedule outages at times when facility is not being used.

D. Construction Plan: Before start of construction, submit three copies of construction plan regarding access to Work, use of Site, and utility outages for acceptance by Owner. After acceptance of plan, construction operations shall comply with accepted plan unless deviations are accepted by Owner in writing.

## 1.6 PERMITS

A. Obtain all permits and licenses required to perform the work required by the Contract Documents (Drawings, Specifications and Contract).

## 1.7 SPECIFICATION LANGUAGE

A. These Specifications are written in imperative mood and streamlined form. This imperative language is directed to Contractor unless specifically noted otherwise. The words "shall be" are included by inference where a colon (:) is used within sentences or phrases.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION - Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 01210

### ALLOWANCES PROCEDURES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Construction Drawings, Technical Specifications, Addenda, and general provisions of the Contract, including Contract General Conditions and Supplementary General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Allowances indicated in the Bid Proposal Form to be included in Contract Amount.
  - 1. Selected materials and equipment, and in some cases, their installation, are shown and specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when additional information is available for evaluation. Additional requirements, if necessary, will be issued by change order.
  - 2. Allowances may be used in lieu of metering for temporary construction site utility services or to reimburse project related work performed by Owner's forces, for example, keying.

##### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Refer to product Specifications Sections identified in Allowance description.

##### 1.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ALLOWANCES

- A. Contractor shall submit cost data and other descriptive data to establish basis used by Contractor for determining costs in Contract Amount attributable to each Allowance.
- B. Any amount not fully consumed shall be adjusted by change order.
  - 1. The Contractor will be credited for his actual cost of labor, materials, and other actual costs WITHOUT mark-up.
  - 2. Any unused allowances shall be returned to the Owner using a credit change order for the full amount of the value unused.
  - 3. Should the Contractor's actual costs exceed the specified allowance, the Contractor's Contract Amount will be adjusted by change order in accordance with Contract.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 LUMP SUM ALLOWANCES

Owners Contingency:

- a. The Contractor shall include a contract allowance of \$20,000.00 in their proposal to provide all material, labor, and equipment necessary to design, permit, and installation of unknown conditions.
- b. Owner to determine the conditions and use of this allowance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SELECTION OF PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Representative and Architect will:
  1. Consult with Contractor for considerations to be given in selection of products, suppliers and qualified installers.
  2. Make selection in consultation with HCS Facility staff. Obtain written direction by HCS's Representative designating:
    - a. Product, color, design and finish.
    - b. Accessories and attachments.
    - c. Suppliers and qualified installers, as applicable.
    - d. Allowance amount to be included in Contract Amount.
    - e. Construction Contract warranty and manufacturer's guarantee provisions.
- B. Contractor shall:
  1. Assist HCS Facility staff's Representative and Architect in determining qualified suppliers or installers.
  2. Obtain proposals from suppliers and installers.
  3. Make cost and constructability recommendations to Owner's Representative and Architect for consideration in product, supplier and qualified installer selections.
  4. Notify Owner's Representative and Architect promptly of:
    - a. Reasonable objections Contractor may have against any supplier or party under consideration for installation.
    - b. Effects on Construction Schedule anticipated by selections under consideration.

### 3.2 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Upon notification of selection, Contractor shall execute purchase agreement with designated supplier(s) and enter into contract with designated qualified installer(s), as applicable.
- B. Contractor shall make all arrangements for and submit shop drawings, product data and samples as required.
- C. Contractor shall make all arrangements for pick-up, delivery, handling and storage of products.
- D. Upon delivery, Contractor shall promptly inspect products for damage or defects. Should damage or defects be found, Contractor shall effect return, replacement or

repair of products, as appropriate, and process claims for transportation damage.

- E. Contractor shall apply, install and finish products in compliance with requirements of applicable Sections of Specifications.

### 3.3 ADJUSTMENT COSTS

- A. Should the net cost of the Allowance be more or less than the amount included in the Contract Amount, the Contract Amount shall be adjusted in accordance with provisions of the Contract General Conditions and a Change Order shall be executed.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

## 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Base Bid: To provide all Work as described in the Drawings and Specifications using Makeup Air Units (Dedicated Outdoor air systems (DOAS) Packaged Energy Recovery Units) Manufactured by Trane.
- B. Alternate Number 1: To provide all Work as described in the Drawings and Specifications using Makeup Air Units (Dedicated Outdoor air systems (DOAS) Packaged Energy Recovery Units) Manufactured by Greenheck.
- C. Alternate Number 2: To provide all Work as described in the Drawings and Specifications to abandon the existing OAU-1, OAU-2 & OAU-3 air handling units in place on mechanical mezzanine platforms and to leave the existing ceilings in place in classrooms 209, 312, and 615.

END OF SECTION 012300

## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENT

- A. The **Contract Agreement** with referenced attachments, technical specifications and drawings including all project addenda constitute the Scope of the Work.
- B. Specific project requirements are included in the Contract Agreement and contain, but may include more than the following:
  - 1. Pre-Construction Meeting
  - 2. Construction Management
  - 3. Conformance to applicable Codes and Laws
  - 4. Project Schedule
  - 5. SLED Background checks
  - 6. Submittals
  - 7. Record Drawings
  - 8. Quality Control
  - 9. Cut and Patching
  - 10. Jobsite Supervision
  - 11. Work site control and clean-up.
  - 12. Material testing and Inspections
  - 13. Warranties and Guarantees
  - 14. Traffic Control and Safety
- C. **Important safety and specific Horry County School requirements are contained in the Contract Agreement and specifically Section 83 “ Mandatory Safety and Conduct Requirements.”**

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Those work restrictions and limitations listed on the **Scope of Work ( Exhibit A )** and the **Contract Agreement**.

## 1.3 UTILITY USE AND CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless specifically noted otherwise within the Scope of Work ( Exhibit A ) to the Contract Agreement. Allow other entities to use temporary



services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Requirement for temporary utilities to be paid for by the Owner:

1. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations at no cost to the Owner.
2. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations at no cost to the Owner.
  - a. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
  - b. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Included within the **Contract agreement** and within each specific specification section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY FENCING

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch , 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-

inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails.

- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch , 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

## 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in **Contract agreement**. Keep office clean and orderly.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures".

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- D. Heating: Provide temporary heating required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- E. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- F. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
  - 1. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel

1. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.

### 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with the following:

B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.

1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.

C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

D. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.

E. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.

1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.

- a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.

3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

F. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.

- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Prior to commencing earthwork, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations and / or as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
  - 2. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  - 3. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.

- K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- L. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by Owner from fumes and noise.
  - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant-treated plywood on construction operations side.
  - 2. Construct dustproof partitions with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant-treated plywood.
    - a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
  - 3. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
  - 4. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
  - 5. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
  - 6. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - 7. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.

### 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent

construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 013100

## SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Installation of the Work.
  - 2. Cutting and patching.
  - 3. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 4. Progress cleaning.
  - 5. Starting and adjusting.
  - 6. Protection of installed construction.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety
- B. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, **mechanical and electrical systems**, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to **local utility and to Owner** that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Owner.

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Engineer **and Owner** promptly.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect **or Owner**. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

### 3.5 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017300

## SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Construction waste management plan.
  - 2. Construction waste recycling.
  - 3. Construction waste adaptive reuse.

## 1.2 PLAN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Develop and implement construction waste management plan as approved by Architect/Engineer.
- B. Intent:
  - 1. Divert construction, demolition, and land-clearing debris from landfill disposal.
  - 2. Redirect recyclable material back to manufacturing process.
  - 3. Generate cost savings or increase minimal additional cost to Project for waste disposal.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Construction Waste Management Plan: Submit construction waste management plan describing methods and procedures for implementation and monitoring compliance including the following:
  - 1. Transportation company hauling construction waste to waste processing facilities.
  - 2. Recycling and adaptive reuse processing facilities and waste type each facility will accept.
  - 3. Construction waste materials anticipated for recycling and adaptive reuse.
  - 4. On-Site sorting and Site storage methods.

## 1.4 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. Construction Waste Landfill Diversion: Minimum 50 percent by weight of construction waste materials for duration of Project through resale, recycling, or adaptive reuse.
- B. Implement construction waste management plan at start of construction.
- C. Review construction waste management plan at preconstruction meeting and progress meetings.
- D. Distribute approved construction waste management plan to Subcontractors and others affected by plan requirements.
- E. Oversee plan implementation, instruct construction personnel for plan compliance, and document plan results.

- F. Purchase products to prevent waste by:
  - 1. Ensuring correct quantity of each material is delivered to Site.
  - 2. Choosing products with minimal or no packaging.
  - 3. Requiring suppliers to use returnable pallets or containers.
  - 4. Requiring suppliers to take or buy back rejected or unused items.

#### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION WASTE RECYCLING

- A. Use source separation method or comingling method suitable to sorting and processing method of selected recycling center. Dispose nonrecyclable trash separately into landfill.
- B. Source Separation Method: Recyclable materials separated from trash and sorted into separate bins or containers, identified by waste type, prior to transportation to recycling center.
- C. Comingling Method: Recyclable materials separated from trash and placed in unsorted bins or container for sorting at recycling center.
- D. Materials suggested for recycling include:
  - 1. Packing materials including paper, cardboard, foam plastic, and sheeting.
  - 2. Recyclable plastics.
  - 3. Organic plant debris.
  - 4. Earth materials.
  - 5. Native stone and granular fill.
  - 6. Asphalt and concrete paving.
  - 7. Wood with and without embedded nails and staples.
  - 8. Glass, clear and colored types.
  - 9. Metals.
  - 10. Gypsum products.
  - 11. Acoustical ceiling tile.
  - 12. Carpet.
  - 13. Equipment oil.

#### 1.6 CONSTRUCTION WASTE ADAPTIVE REUSE

- A. Arrange with processing facility for salvage of construction material and processing for reuse. Do not reuse construction materials on-Site except as allowed by Architect/Engineer.
- B. Materials suggested for adaptive reuse include:
  - 1. Concrete and crushed concrete.
  - 2. Masonry units.
  - 3. Lumber suitable for re-sawing or refinishing.
  - 4. Casework and millwork.
  - 5. Doors and door frames.
  - 6. Windows.
  - 7. Window glass and insulating glass units.
  - 8. Hardware.
  - 9. Acoustical ceiling tile.

10. Equipment and appliances.
11. Fluorescent light fixtures and lamps.
12. Incandescent light fixtures and lamps.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION WASTE COLLECTION

- A. Collect construction waste materials in marked bins or containers and arrange for transportation to recycling centers or adaptive salvage and reuse processing facilities.
- B. Maintain recycling and adaptive reuse storage and collection area in orderly arrangement with materials separated to eliminate co-mingling of materials required to be delivered separately to waste processing facility.
- C. Store construction waste materials to prevent environmental pollution, fire hazards, hazards to persons and property, and contamination of stored materials.
- D. Cover construction waste materials subject to disintegration, evaporation, settling, or runoff to prevent polluting air, water, and soil.

### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Deliver construction waste to waste processing facilities. Obtain receipt for deliveries.
- B. Dispose of construction waste not capable of being recycled or adaptively reused by delivery to landfill, incinerator, or other legal disposal facility. Obtain receipt for deliveries.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From all authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

## 1.4 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.

2. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  3. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of **5** days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  2. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  3. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 5 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect, Engineer and Owner will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect and Engineer will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by the Architect and Engineer, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Contractor shall compensate Architect and Engineer at the firm's standard billing rates for additional reinspections beyond the first.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

## 1.5 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items:
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 5 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. Engineer will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Contractor shall

compensate Architect and Engineer at the firm's standard billing rates for additional reinspections beyond the first.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Owner for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 NOT USED

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements specified.

#### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

END OF SECTION 017700



## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
    - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
    - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least **30** days before commencing demonstration and training. Engineer will determine whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least **15** days before commencing demonstration and training.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

### 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.

7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, **loose-leaf** binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, **and** subject matter

of contents, and indicate **Specification Section number on bottom of spine**. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.

2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
  - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
  - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.3 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
  1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.
  6. Limiting conditions.
  7. Performance curves.
  8. Engineering data and tests.
  9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Startup procedures.
  - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
  - 5. Instructions on stopping.
  - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.4 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

- 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## 2.5 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available. Provide recording in commonly used digital format.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
  - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823



## SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

## 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit **one** set(s) of marked-up record prints.
    - a. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
      - 2) Print each drawing, whether changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit **one paper copy and annotated PDF electronic file** of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit **one paper copy and annotated PDF electronic files and directories** of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit **one paper copy and annotated PDF electronic files** of each submittal.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
  2. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  3. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  4. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  5. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

### 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, **record Product Data**, and record Drawings where applicable.

- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as **scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.**

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Engineer's **and Owner's** reference at all times work is being performed.

END OF SECTION 017839

## SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training video recordings.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- C. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Operations manuals.
    - b. Maintenance manuals.
    - c. Project record documents.
    - d. Identification systems.
    - e. Warranties and bonds.
    - f. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  - 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:

- a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
- a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
- a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

### 3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to **format file type acceptable to Owner**, on electronic media.
  - 1. Electronic Media: Read-only format compact disc acceptable to Owner, with commercial-grade graphic label.
  - 2. File Names: Utilize file names based upon name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
  - 3. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training DVD that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project table of contents:

- a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
  - b. Business address.
  - c. Business phone number.
  - d. Point of contact.
  - e. E-mail address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
  - 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
    - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
    - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
    - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
  - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

END OF SECTION 017900



## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of all items off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be permanently removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  2. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  3. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  4. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's building manager's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 4. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- D. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition.
- E. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.
- F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- G. Warranties: Documentation indicated that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Owner of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain all existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.
- C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- E. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs.
  - 1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
  - 2. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of

measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
    - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
    - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
    - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- C. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment to be selectively demolished according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Section 013100 "Project management and Coordination."

- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

### 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level.
  - 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  - 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - 5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - 6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  - 7. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Removed and Salvaged Items:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  - 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area off-site designated by Owner.
  - 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- C. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
  - 1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.

2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.5 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an-approved landfill.
1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

## SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.

- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

- 1. Loose steel lintels.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

- 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 2.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.



- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize and prime all exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

## 2.8 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.

## 2.9 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize and prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## 2.10 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## 2.11 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

#### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

## SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

## 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

- A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
  - 1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  - 2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.30-inch wg.
  - 1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at and no more than 50-cfm cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
  - 2. Substrate primers.
  - 3. Collars.
  - 4. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- B. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

- C. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- D. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.
- E. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- F. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- G. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- H. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

## 2.4 MIXING

- A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.



3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.
  1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
  2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  4. Date of installation.
  5. Manufacturer's name.
  6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2174.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

### 3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 1001-1999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- C. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 2001-2999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- D. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Electrical Cables:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 3001-3999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- E. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Cable Trays with Electric Cables:
  - 1. UL-Classified Systems: 4001-4999.
  - 2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- F. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Insulated Pipes:

1. UL-Classified Systems: 5001-5999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- G. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: 6001-6999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- H. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: 7001-7999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.
- I. Penetration Firestopping Systems for Groupings of Penetrants:
1. UL-Classified Systems: 8001-8999.
  2. Type of Fill Materials: As required to achieve rating.

END OF SECTION 078413

## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Silicone joint sealants.

## 1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

- 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following:
  - 1. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

- C. Low-Emitting Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

## 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 791.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc; SCS2000 SilPruf.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc., a subsidiary of Sika Corporation U.S.; Bondaflex Sil 265 LTS.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; PCS.

## 2.3 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- B. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.

2. Joint-Sealant Color: Match surrounding surface and finish colors. .

END OF SECTION 079200



## SECTION 095123 - ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS – Reinstallation of Removed System

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Reinstallation of removed acoustical tiles.
  - 2. Reinstallation of removed suspension systems.

## 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

## 2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and for

compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Testing Substrates: Before adhesively bonding tiles to wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings according to ASTM C636/C636M to match installation standards of existing system.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.

7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges of tiles so tile-to-tile joints are interlocked.
1. Fit adjoining tiles to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tiles for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through ceiling.
  2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tiles and moldings, spaced 12 inches (305 mm) o.c.
  3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts according to requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

## 2.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m), non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m), non-cumulative.

2.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095123

## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.

- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Sleeves.
- 2. Sleeve-seal fittings.
- 3. Grout.
- 4. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.



## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
  - 4. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
  - 2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

- C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- C. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6.
  - 3. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6.

END OF SECTION 230517

## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.

- b. Insulated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Plastic pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Equipment supports.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation and seismic restraint devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts for duct hangers and supports.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  1. Metal framing systems.
  2. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

#### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

#### 2.3 PLASTIC PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of plastic.
- B. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.
- C. Flammability: ASTM D 635, ASTM E 84, and UL 94.

## 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
  - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted extruded-aluminum channel with inturred lips.
  - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer.
  - 7. Metallic Coating: Pregalvanized G90.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

## 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.



### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- F. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  - 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  - 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  - 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.

2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  2. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

- N. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

## SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Restrained roof-curbs.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development (for the State of California).

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
    - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES and OSHPD.
    - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.
1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
  3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:
    - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacing. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
    - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
    - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an evaluation service member of ICC-ES and OSHPD, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
  - B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Refer to Drawings Title Sheet for Seismic and Wind restraint design criteria.
- B. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they are subjected.

### 2.2 SEISMIC AND WIND RESISTANT ROOF-CURBS AND EQUIPMENT RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 2. Kinetics Noise Control.
  - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Thybar Corporation.
  - 5. Amber Booth
  - 6. Industrial Sheet Metal
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curbs designed to support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- C. The frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and piping and shall resist seismic and wind forces. The support assembly shall be formed of all welded galvanized sheet metal. The support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

#### 3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of vibration isolators and seismic restraints shall not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- C. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES and OSHPD that provides required submittals for component.
- D. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams or at upper truss chords of bar joists.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect installation of seismic restraint and wind resistant roof curbs and equipment rails and connections between supported equipment and curbs and rails and connections between curbs and rails and roof structure for compliance with IBC 2015 requirements.
  - 2. Schedule inspections with Contractor through the Program Manager with at least seven days' advance notice.



- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230548

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels
  - 3. Pipe labels.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 2 inches for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 3 inches for viewing distances up to 72 inches , and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 5 by 3 inches.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 2 inches for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 3 inches for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1 on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on a safety-black background.

### 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 GENERAL

- A. Project requires that the entire air side of all new mechanical units and air distribution systems for all systems being replaced in the School to be fully tested, adjusted and balanced (TAB) as specified in this Section including, but not limited to all equipment, fans, coils, heat recovery devices, and air distribution devices (grilles and registers) whether new or existing.
- B. Copies of HCSs Record Drawings indicating existing system configuration are available for information only upon request. The accuracy of those documents is not guaranteed.
- C. TAB agent shall visit the Project site prior to bidding and verify the number of air distribution devices and existing conditions at the site. No additional cost after bidding for TAB work will be allowed for claims of insufficient information or differing site conditions from what is shown on the existing Record Drawings.
- D. Record Drawings of all the existing interior HVAC systems are not available.
- E. TAB agent shall mark a hard copy a set of the existing Record Floor Plans and indicate where existing equipment and air distribution devices are located. Markup of duct layouts will not be required. At Project Closeout, all hard copies of TAB agent markups to Record Drawings shall be scanned into PDF format and included in the electronic closeout document submittal.

## 1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
    - a. Motors.
    - b. Heat-transfer coils.
  - 3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
  - 4. Control system verification.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting the qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.

B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, engage one of the following:

1. Palmetto Air and Water
2. Carolina Air and Water
3. Vapor Test and Balance Co, Inc.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.



- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
  - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:

- a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Duct systems are complete.
- c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
- d. Clean filters are installed.
- e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
- f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete, and safeties are verified.
- g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance," ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" or SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation,".
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at air distribution devices and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 4. Obtain approval from Program Manager for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.
  5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  6. Measure and record all operating data.
  7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Phase and hertz.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
1. Nameplate data.
  2. Airflow.
  3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
  5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil and heat transfer device:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 3. Entering and leaving air side static pressure.
  - 4. Airflow.

### 3.9 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  - 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
  - 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
  - 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
  - 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
  - 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
  - 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
  - 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
  - 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
  - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
  - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
  - 4. Check the condition of filters.
  - 5. Check the condition of coils.
  - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
  - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
  - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  - 3. Drain pans are clean.
  - 4. Fans are clean.

5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  4. Balance each air outlet.

### 3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.12 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.13 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Fan curves.
  2. Manufacturers' test data.
  3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  14. Test conditions for fans performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  4. Balancing stations.
  5. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. Unit identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Unit arrangement and class.
- g. Discharge arrangement.
- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- j. Number, make, and size of belts.
- k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.



- g. Face area in sq. ft..
    - h. Tube size in NPS.
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
    - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil identification.
    - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
    - e. Number of stages.
    - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    - g. Rated amperage.
    - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - i. Face area in sq. ft..
    - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
    - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - c. Air velocity in fpm.
    - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
    - f. Voltage at each connection.
    - g. Amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
  - 1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.

- d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 2. Motor Data:
  - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and rpm.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
  - c. Fan rpm.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig.

### 3.14 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the Program Manager and/or commissioning authority.
- B. Program Manager and/or Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
  - 3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.15 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 3. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for

installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.

- d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type II for sheet materials.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-03/11-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-03/11-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
  5. Color: Aluminum.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Metal Jacket:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless-Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - 3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
    - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  - 2. Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:



1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 316; 0.015-inch-thick,  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
    - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030-inch-thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.11 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040-inch-thick, minimum 1x1-inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- B. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024-inch-thick, minimum 1x1-inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1-inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.

- b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be

limited to one location for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 3. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 2. Vibration-control devices.
  - 3. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.9 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Concealed, round return-air and exhaust air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Concealed, rectangular, return-air and exhaust air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

### 3.10 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Exposed duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Closed Cell Foam Rubber: 2 inches thick with aluminum cover.

### 3.11 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
  - 1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.032 inch thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
  - 1. Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations: 0.040 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230713

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
2. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturer: Pittsburgh Corning Corporation, or engineer approved equal.
  2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
- 
5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following manufacturers:
  - a. Armacell LLC
  - b. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
  - c. K-Flex USA.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - b. Knauf Insulation.
  - c. Manson Insulation Inc.
  - d. Owens Corning.

2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- E. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Vimasco Corporation.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F .
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Knauf Insulation.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
    - f. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 1.2 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Color: White.

### 1.3 SEALANTS

#### A. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Joint Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.

#### B. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

### 1.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

#### A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

### 1.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

#### A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

## 1.6 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

## 1.7 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 2.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.



- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
- a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

## 2.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 2.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

6. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

7. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.

4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

## 2.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 2.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

## 2.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 2.9 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
  - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 2.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to **three** locations of straight pipe, **three** locations of threaded valves,
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 2.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

## 2.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

### A. Condensate Drain Water below 60 Deg F :

#### 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
- b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

### B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

#### 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
- b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch thick.

### C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:

#### 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

## 2.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

### A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: **2 inches** thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: **2 inches** thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **2 inches** thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
  1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **2 inches** thick.

#### 2.14 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
  2. Aluminum with Z-Shaped Locking Seam:

END OF SECTION 230719



## SECTION 230923 – DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

## PART 1 – GENERAL

## 1.01 Work Included:

- A. General - This project requires the modification and upgrade of an existing Siemens Apogee Building Automation System (BAS). At the completion of these modifications and upgrades a fully integrated and fully functional Web Based Building Automation System (BAS), incorporating direct digital control (DDC) for energy management, equipment monitoring and control, lighting control, utility monitoring and subsystems with open communications capabilities as herein specified shall be designed, furnished, installed, started up, tested, commissioned and turned over to the Horry County Schools (HCS) by HCS's BAS provider, Control Management, Inc.. The contractor responsible for providing the Building Management System (BMS) work under this Section (CMI) shall:
1. Provide complete upgraded DDC HVAC controls system with electric actuation and repair integration with existing Lighting control systems.
  2. Provide all wiring, conduit, panels, and accessories for a complete operational system.
  3. Be responsible for all electrical work associated with the BMS.
    - a. Perform all wiring in accordance with all local and national codes.
    - b. Install all line voltage wiring, concealed or exposed, in conduit in accordance with the division 26 specifications, NEC and local building code.
    - c. Provide extension of 120 volt, 20 amp circuits and circuit breakers from Emergency power panels for all BMS equipment power. Provide and install local UPS Power supply for all BMS system panels and equipment.
    - d. Provide transient surge protection incorporated in design of system to protect electrical components in all DDC Controllers and operator's workstations.
    - e. Route all low voltage electrical control wiring throughout the building whether in exposed areas in conduit in accordance with the division 26 specifications, local building code and the NEC.

- f. Provide all miscellaneous field device mounting and interconnecting wiring for all mechanical and designated electrical systems including, but not limited to, Packaged Roof Mounted, Air Cooled Variable Air Volume (VAV) SPAC Units, Packaged Air Cooled DHS outdoor air units, Packaged Roof Mounted Air Cooled Heat Pumps (SPHP's), VAV Terminal Units, Lighting Control Panels and Interfaces, Power Monitoring and Domestic Water Monitoring equipment.
    - g. All systems requiring interlock wiring shall be hardwired interlocked and shall not rely on the BMS to operate (e.g. smoke detectors to fire alarm system) Interlock wiring shall be run in separate conduits from BMS associated wiring.
- 4. Provide all thermowells for water monitoring devices, flow switches and alarms, as required.
  - a. All installation kits for turbine flow meters shall allow service and removal under pressure.
- 5. Provide open communications system. The system shall be an open architecture with the capabilities to support a multi-vendor environment. To accomplish this effectively, system shall be capable of utilizing standard protocols as follows as well as be able to integrate third-party systems via existing vendor protocols.
  - a. System shall be capable of high speed Ethernet communication using TCP/IP protocol.
  - b. System shall be capable of BACnet communication according to ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004.
  - c. System shall be capable of OPC server communications according to OPC Data Access 2.0 and Alarms and Events 1.0.
  - d. System shall be capable of using the LonTalk protocol.
  - e. The system shall be capable of supporting both standard and vendor specific protocols to integrate a wide variety of third-party devices and legacy systems.
  - f. The intent is to either use the Operator Workstation provided under this contract to communicate with control systems provided by other vendors or to allow information about the system provided in this contract to be sent to another workstation. This allows the user to have a single seat from which to perform daily operation.

6. Provide hardware, software, and wiring to provide communication interfaces with each of the systems listed below.
  - a. Existing Systems and Equipment currently being controlled or monitored that are not affected by the HVAC systems and equipment being upgraded and replaced under this Contract.
  - b. Packaged Roof Mounted HVAC Equipment (RTUs, HPs, DHSs)
  - c. Power Monitoring
  - d. Domestic Water Monitoring
  - e. Fire Alarm System
7. Provide system graphics for each controlled device and/or integrated systems. Origin of information shall be transparent to the operator and shall be controlled, displayed, and trended as if the points were hardwired to the BMS.
8. Provide primary DDC panels as follows (Note – existing DDC panels shall remain in use if compatible with new equipment controls and BACnet interfaces):
  - a. Minimum one (1) BMS system Primary DDC panel per floor. The application specific controllers installed for the terminal units on a floor will be connected to the BMS panel on the same floor.
  - b. Minimum one (1) BMS system Primary DDC panel per each major mechanical system:
    - 1) RTU, HP and DHS
  - c. It is acceptable to combine up to three (3) of the following mechanical equipment into one (1) Primary DDC panel:
    - 1) Exhaust Fans
    - 2) Standalone Supply Fans
    - 3) Package AC Units
  - d. It is acceptable to wire the following systems into any of the Primary DDC panels:
    - 1) Miscellaneous alarm monitoring (i.e. ATS, leak, temperature, light ...etc.)
    - 2) Miscellaneous equipment (i.e. Unit Heater, Domestic Water Heater, Standalone Dampers ...etc.)
9. Provide stand-alone Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) for terminal equipment (VAV terminal units).

B. General product description

1. The installation of the control system shall be performed under the direct supervision of the controls manufacturer with the shop drawings, flow diagrams, bill of materials, component designation, or identification number and sequence of operation all bearing the name of the manufacturer. The installing manufacturer shall certify in writing, that the shop drawings have been prepared by the equipment manufacturer and that the equipment manufacturer has supervised their installation. In addition, the equipment manufacturer shall certify, in writing, that the shop drawings were prepared by their company and that all temperature control equipment was installed under their direct supervision.
2. The installation of the control system shall be performed under the direct supervision of the contractor providing the work under this Section.
3. The shop drawings, flow diagrams, bill of materials, component designation, or identification number and sequence of operation shall all bear the name of the control system manufacturer and the contractor providing the work under this Section.
4. The Contractor providing the work of this Section shall certify in writing, that the shop drawings have been prepared according to the equipment manufacturer's guidelines.
5. All materials and equipment used shall be standard components, regularly manufactured for this and/or other systems and not custom designed especially for this project. All systems and components shall have been thoroughly tested and proven in actual use for at least two years.
6. The system shall be scalable in nature and shall permit expansion of both capacity and functionality through the addition of sensors, actuators, DDC Controllers, and operator devices.
7. System architectural design shall eliminate dependence upon any single device for alarm reporting and control execution. Each DDC Controller shall operate independently by performing its own specified control, alarm management, operator I/O, and data collection. The failure of any single component or network connection shall not interrupt the execution of any control strategy, reporting, alarming and trending function, or any function at any operator interface device.
8. DDC Controllers shall be able to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to, any other DDC Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a

central or intermediate processing device. DDC Controllers shall also be able to send alarm reports to multiple operator workstations without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device.

9. DDC Controllers shall be able to assign password access and control priorities to each point individually. The Logon password (at any PC workstation or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust or control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the PC workstation or portable terminal. Passwords and priority levels for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
10. All DDC controllers shall be installed with 25% spare points (of each type) and 25% spare memory capacity for connection of floor work.

#### 1.02 Products Furnished but Not Installed Under This Section

##### A. Hydronic Piping:

1. Flow Meters

##### B. Refrigerant Piping:

1. Pressure and Temperature Sensor Wells and Sockets

##### C. Duct-work Accessories:

1. Dampers
2. Air-flow Stations
3. Terminal Unit Controls

#### 1.03 Products Integrated To but Not Furnished or Installed Under This Section

##### A. Packaged Rooftop HVAC Equipment:

1. Discharge Air Temperature Control
2. Economizer Control
3. Volume Control

##### B. Variable Frequency Drives

##### C. BACnet System:

1. Server
2. Client

- D. OPC Client
  - E. LonMark Devices
  - F. Fire/Life Safety
  - G. Power/Energy Monitoring
- 1.04 Related Sections
- A. The General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, General Requirements and all Technical Sections in the Project manual are part of this specification and shall be used in conjunction with this section as part of the contract documents.
- 1.05 Approved Control System Contractors and Managers
- A. The following are the approved Control System Contractors and Manufacturers:
    - 1. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc. – Product Line: APOGEE System as furnished and installed by Control Management, Inc. (CMI) under direct contract to HCS. No substitutions allowed. The Contractor shall coordinate controls interface requirements with CMI for the equipment proposed in Contractor’s Bid prior to bidding the Work.
- 1.06 Quality Assurance
- A. The BAS system shall be designed and installed, commissioned and serviced by factory trained personnel. The contractor providing the work under this Section shall have an in-place support facility within 25 miles of the site with technical staff, spare parts inventory and necessary test and diagnostic equipment. Provide a full time, on site, experienced project manager for this work, responsible for direct supervision of the design, installation, start up and commissioning of the BMS.
  - B. Materials and equipment shall be the catalogued products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of automatic temperature control systems and shall be manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the specification requirements.
  - C. All BAS peer-to-peer network controllers, central system controllers, and local user displays shall be UL Listed under Standard UL 916, category PAZX; Standard ULC C100, category UUKL7; and under Standard UL 864, categories UUKL, UDTZ, and QVAX and be so listed at the time of bid. All floor level controllers shall comply, at a minimum, with UL Standard UL 91 6category

PAZX; Standard UL 864, categories UDTZ, and QVAX and be so listed at the time of Bid.

- D. The BAS peer-to-peer network controllers and local user display shall also comply with the European Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Framework, and bear the C-Tic Mark to show compliance. The purpose of the regulation is to minimize electromagnetic interference between electronic products, which may diminish the performance of electrical products or disrupt essential communications.
- E. DDC peer-to-peer controllers shall be compliant with the European EMC Directive, Standards EN 50081-2 and EN 50082-2, at the Industrial Levels. Additionally the equipment shall be compliant with the European LVD Directive and bear the CE mark in order to show compliance to both directives.
- F. All electronic equipment shall conform to the requirements of FCC Regulation, Part 15, Governing Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Interference and be labeled.
- G. All wireless devices shall conform to:
  - 1. The requirements of Title 47 of the Code of Federal Regulations, FCC Part 15, governing radio frequency intentional radiating devices and be issued a FCC user identification and be so labeled. CE Directive 1999/5/EC (Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the Mutual Recognition of their Conformity) [ID: 108]
- H. The manufacturer of the building automation system shall provide documentation supporting compliance with ISO-9002 (Model for Quality Assurance in Production, Installation, and Servicing) and ISO-140001 (The application of well-accepted business management principles to the environment). The intent of this specification requirement is to ensure that the products from the manufacturer are delivered through a Quality System and Framework that will assure consistency in the products delivered for this project.
- I. This system shall have a documented history of compatibility by design for a minimum of 15 years. Future compatibility shall be supported for no less than 10 years. Compatibility shall be defined as the ability to upgrade existing field panels to current level of technology, and extend new field panels on a previously installed network. Compatibility shall be defined as the ability for any existing field panel microprocessor to be connected to and directly communicate with new field panels without bridges, routers or protocol converters.

#### 1.07 Codes and Standards

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the most restrictive of local, state, and federal authorities' codes and ordinances or these plans and specifications. As a minimum, the installation shall comply with current editions in effect 30 days prior to receipt of bids of the following codes:

1. National Electric Code (NEC), 2014 Edition
2. International Building Code (IBC), 2015 Edition
3. International Mechanical Code (IMC), 2015 Edition
4. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135- 2004, BACnet--A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks
5. ASHRAE 90.1, 2013 Edition

#### 1.08 System Performance

- A. Performance Standards. System shall conform to the following minimum standards over network connections. Systems shall be tested using manufacturer's recommended hardware and software for operator workstation (server and browser for web-based systems).
1. Graphic Display. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall display with current data within 10 sec.
  2. Graphic Refresh. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall update with current data within 8 sec. and shall automatically refresh every 15 sec.
  3. Configuration and Tuning Screens. Screens used for configuring, calibrating, or tuning points, control loops, and similar control logic shall automatically refresh within 6 sec.
  4. Alarm Response Time. An object that goes into alarm shall be annunciated at the workstation within 15 sec.
  5. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
  6. Performance. Programmable controllers shall be able to completely execute DDC control loops at a frequency adjustable down to once per sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
  7. Multiple Alarm Annunciations. Each workstation on the network shall receive alarms within 5 sec of other workstations.
  8. Reporting Accuracy. System shall report values with minimum end-to-end accuracy as listed in 'Table 1.



9. Control Stability and Accuracy. Control loops shall maintain measured variable at setpoint within industry accepted tolerances.

#### 1.09 Submittals

- A. Product Submittal Requirements. Meet requirements of Section 013300 on Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples. Provide electronic copies of shop drawings and other submittals on hardware, software, and equipment to be installed or furnished. Begin no work until submittals have been approved for conformity with design intent. Provide drawings as AutoCAD 2004 (or newer) compatible files (file format: .pdf). When manufacturer's cutsheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, clearly indicate applicable data by highlighting or by other means. Clearly reference covered specification and drawing on each submittal. General catalogs shall not be accepted as cut sheets to fulfill submittal requirements. Select and show submittal quantities appropriate to scope of work.
- B. Provide submittals within 4 weeks of contract award
- C. Submittal data shall consist of the following:
  1. Direct Digital Control System Hardware:
    - a. Complete bill of materials indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment to be used.
    - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data, such as product specification sheets, installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items not listed below:
      - 1) Direct Digital Controllers (controller panels)
      - 2) Transducers and transmitters
      - 3) Sensors (including accuracy data)
      - 4) Valves
      - 5) Dampers
      - 6) Relays and Switches
      - 7) Control Panels
      - 8) Power Supplies
      - 9) Operator Interface Equipment
    - c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show all termination numbers.
    - d. Floor plan schematic diagrams indicating control panel and space temperature sensor locations.

2. Central System Hardware and Software:
  - a. Complete bill of material indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment used.
  - b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as product specifications for items listed below and for relevant items furnished under this contract not listed below:
    - 1) Interface Equipment Between CPU and Control Panels
    - 2) Operating System Software
    - 3) Operator Interface Software
    - 4) Color Graphic Software
    - 5) Third-Party Software
  - c. Schematic diagrams of all control, communication, and power wiring for central system installation. Show interface wiring to control system.
  - d. Provide sample color graphics for each typical system indicating conceptual layout of pictures and data for each graphic. List of color graphics to be provided showing or explaining which other graphics can be directly accessed.
  - e. Provide a list of BMS point naming convention. Indicate the format, structure and standards of typical point names. Provide a list of point names for typical equipment and functions with specific examples.
3. Controlled Systems:
  - a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
  - b. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Label control points with point names. Graphically show locations of control elements.
  - c. Schematic wiring diagram of each controlled system. Label control elements and terminals. Where a control element is also shown on control system schematic use the same name.
  - d. Instrumentation list for each controlled system. List control system element in a table. Show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data sheet number.

- e. Complete description of control system operation including sequences of operation. Include and reference schematic diagram of controlled system.
  - f. Point list for each system controller including both inputs and outputs (I/O), point numbers, controlled device associated with each I/O point, and location of I/O device. List shall include all BACnet points derived from equipment manufacturer and third party interfaces.
- 4. Description of process, report formats and checklists to be used in Part 3: "Control System Demonstration and Acceptance."
- 5. Submit documentation in the following phased delivery schedule:
  - a. Valve and damper schedules
  - b. Point Naming Convention
  - c. Sample Graphics
  - d. System schematics, including:
    - 1) System Riser Diagrams
    - 2) Sequence of Operations
    - 3) Mechanical Control Schematics
    - 4) Electrical Wiring Diagrams
    - 5) Control Panel Layouts
    - 6) Product Specification Sheets
  - e. As-Built drawings
- D. Schedules:
  - 1. Schedule of work provided within one month of contract award indicating:
    - a. Intended sequence of work item.
    - b. Start dates of each work item.
    - c. Duration of each work item.
    - d. Planned delivery dates for ordered material and equipment and expected lead times.
    - e. Milestones indicating possible restraints on work by other trades or situations.
  - 2. Monthly written status reports indicating work completed and revisions to expected delivery. Include updated schedule of work.
- E. Project Record Documents: Submit three copies of record (as-built) documents upon completion of installation. Submittal shall consist of:

1. Project Record Drawings. As-built versions of the submittal shop drawings provided as AutoCAD 2004 (or newer) compatible files via Dropbox, Google Drive or similar online file storage and transfer website and one copy as 11" x 17" prints.
2. Testing and Commissioning Reports and Checklists. Completed versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs used to meet requirements of Part 3: "Control System Demonstration and Acceptance."
3. Operation and Maintenance (O & M) Manual.
  - a. As-built versions of the submittal product data.
  - b. Names, addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of installing contractors and service representatives for equipment and control systems.
  - c. Operator's Manual with procedures for operating control systems, logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and variables.
  - d. Programming manual or set of manuals with description of programming language and of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
  - e. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manual or set of manuals that explains how to design and install new points, panels, and other hardware; how to perform preventive maintenance and calibration; how to debug hardware problems; and how to repair or replace hardware.
  - f. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language, including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
  - g. Graphic files, programs, and database on magnetic or optical media.
  - h. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
  - i. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware, including computer equipment and sensors.

- j. Complete original original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
  - k. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for equipment and systems.
  - l. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- F. Training Materials. Provide course outline and manuals at least six weeks before training.

#### 1.10 Warranty

- A. Warrant labor and materials for specified control system free from defects for a period of 12 months after final acceptance. Failures on control systems that include all computer equipment, transmission equipment and all sensors and control devices during warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner. Respond during normal business hours within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
- B. Work shall have a single warranty date, even if Owner receives beneficial use due to early system start-up. If specified work is split into multiple contracts or a multi-phase contract, each contract or phase shall have a separate warranty start date and period.
- C. Provide updates to operator workstation software, project-specific software, graphic software, database software, and firmware that resolve identified software deficiencies at no charge during warranty period. If available, Owner can purchase in-warranty service agreement to receive upgrades for functional enhancements associated with the above-mentioned items. Do not install updates or upgrades without Owner's written authorization.
- D. Exception:
  - 1. Reused devices are not required to be warranted, except those that have been rebuilt or repaired. Installation labor and materials shall be warranted. Demonstrate operable condition of reused devices at time of Engineer's acceptance.

#### 1.11 Ownership of Proprietary Material

- A. Project specific software and documentation shall become Owner's property. This includes, but not limited to:
  - 1. Graphics
  - 2. Record drawings
  - 3. Database
  - 4. Application programming code
- B. Documentation
  - 1. General
    - a. Provide completely Web-based electronic project documentation in addition to the hard copy owner's manual by utilizing Internet Web access. The electronic project documentation shall be accessible for authorized personnel anytime from anywhere requiring only a simple Internet access.
    - b. Submit electronic draft copy of owner's manuals for review. After review by authorized representative, incorporate review comments and submit four (4) interim final copies.
    - c. Submit one electronic copy of owner's manuals upon completion of project.
    - d. Submit electronic copies of complete as-built documentation. All drawings shall be in standard AutoCad 2014 format, other documentation shall be in standard MS Office format and PDF format.
    - e. Update manuals with modifications made to system during guarantee period. Provide replacement pages or supplements in quantity stated above for "as built" manuals.
    - f. Manuals shall be electronically indexed to table of contents and indexes linked so that user may access linked pages and sections directly from a table of contents or index.
    - g. On the first page of each manual identify with project name, manual title, owner's name, engineer's name, contractor's name, address and service phone number, and person who prepared manual.

2. Web-based project documentation system shall serve as an off-site plan archive and provide access to any project-related documentation from a single source. The Web archive system shall comply with the following requirements:
  - a. The Web-based archive shall store all project related documentation on the contractor providing the work under this Section's secure online document server.
  - b. The database management and maintenance shall be the responsibility of the contractor providing the work under this Section.
  - c. The archive shall be accessible using a high-speed Internet access by simply visiting a password protected Web address. User shall be able to access all information utilizing standard MS Office applications.
  - d. The system shall have advanced security and support custom access levels as defined by the administrator using the latest encryption technology.
  - e. The project archive shall be capable to update documentation to reflect new revisions.
  - f. The project documentation archive shall provide access to all project related documentation that includes, but not limited to contractual, specification and as-built documents, such as mechanical control drawings, and electrical wiring schematics, sequences of operation, point lists.
  - g. Provide electronic device lists and product specification/data sheets.
  - h. Provide a Web-based part ordering system.
  - i. Provide access to the control program code library.
  - j. The project archive shall be expandable to incorporate future projects as necessary.
  - k. The system shall provide access to the building service information. The user shall be able to request a service, view account activities, contracts, share files and generate custom reports.

- C. Operating manual to serve as training and reference manual for all aspects of day-to-day operation of the system. As a minimum include the following:
  - 1. Sequence of operation for automatic and manual operating modes for all building systems. The sequences shall cross reference the system point names including the equipment manufacturers BACnet point names.
  - 2. Description of manual override operation of all control points in system.
  - 3. BMS system manufacturers complete operating manuals.
- D. Provide maintenance manual to serve as training and reference manual for all aspects of day-to-day maintenance and major system repairs. As a minimum include the following:
  - 1. Complete as-built installation drawings for each building system.
  - 2. Overall system electrical power supply schematic indicating source of electrical power for each system component. Indicate all battery backup provisions.
  - 3. Photographs and/or drawings showing installation details and locations of equipment.
  - 4. Routine preventive maintenance procedures, corrective diagnostics troubleshooting procedures, and calibration procedures.
  - 5. Parts lists with manufacturer's catalog numbers and ordering information.
  - 6. Lists of ordinary and special tools, operating materials supplies and test equipment recommended for operation and servicing.
  - 7. Manufacturer's operation, set-up, maintenance and catalog literature for each piece of equipment.
  - 8. Maintenance and repair instructions.
  - 9. Recommended spare parts.
- E. Provide Programming Manual to serve as training and reference manual for all aspects of system programming. As a minimum include the following:
  - 1. Complete programming manuals, and reference guides.



2. Details of any custom software packages and compilers supplied with system.
3. Information and access required for independent programming of system.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.01 Materials

- A. All products used in this project installation shall be new and currently manufactured and shall have been applied in similar installations. Do not use this installation as a product test site unless explicitly approved in writing by Owner or Owner's representative. Spare parts shall be available for at least five years after completion of this contract.

### 2.02 Communication

- A. The design of the BMS shall support networking of operator workstations and Building Controllers. The network architecture shall consist of two levels, an Ethernet based primary network for all operator workstations, servers, and primary DDC controllers along with secondary Floor Level Networks (FLN) for terminal equipment application specific controllers.
- B. Access to system data shall not be restricted by the hardware configuration of the building management system. The hardware configuration of the BMS network shall be totally transparent to the user when accessing data or developing control programs.
- C. Operator Workstation Communication:
  1. All color graphic operator workstations shall reside on the Ethernet network and the consoles shall be set up in a client/server configuration.
  2. The servers will act as the central database for system graphics and databases to provide consistency throughout all system workstations.
  3. The network shall allow concurrent use of multiple BMS software site licenses.
- D. Management Level Network Communication (MLN)
  1. All PCs shall simultaneously direct connect to the Ethernet Management Level Network without the use of an interposing device.

2. Operator Workstation shall be capable of simultaneous direct connection and communication with BACnet/IP, OPC and TCP/IP corporate level networks without the use of interposing devices.
3. The Primary Network shall not impose a maximum constraint on the number of operator workstations.
4. Any controller residing on the primary network shall connect to Ethernet network without the use of a PC or a gateway with a hard drive.
5. Any PC on the Primary Network shall have transparent communication with controllers on the building level networks connected via Ethernet.
6. Any break in Ethernet communication from the PC to the controllers on the Primary Network shall result in a notification at the PC.
7. The standard client and server workstations on the Primary Network shall reside on industry standard Ethernet utilizing standard TCP/IP, IEEE 802.3.
8. System software applications will run as a service to allow communication with Primary Network Controllers without the need for user log in. Closing the application or logging off shall not prevent the processing of alarms, network status, panel failures, and trend information.
9. Any break in Ethernet communication between the standard client and server workstations on the Primary Network shall result in a notification at each workstation.
10. Access to the system database shall be available from any standard client workstation on the Primary Network.
11. Client access to client-server workstation configurations over the Internet network shall be available via Web browser interface.
12. Thin Client access to client-server workstation configurations via Windows Terminal Services shall provide multiple, independent sessions of the workstations software. Terminal Services clients shall have full functionality, without the need to install the workstation software on the local hard drive.

E. Primary Network - Panel to Panel Communication:

1. All Building Controllers shall directly reside on the primary Ethernet network such that communications may be executed directly between

Building Controllers, directly between server and Building Controllers on a peer-to-peer basis.

2. Systems that operate via polled response or other types of protocols that rely on a central processor, file server, or similar device to manage panel-to-panel or device-to-device communications shall not be acceptable.
3. All operator interfaces shall have the ability to access all point status and application report data or execute control functions for any and all other devices. Access to data shall be based upon logical identification of building equipment. No hardware or software limits shall be imposed on the number of devices with global access to the network data.
4. The primary network shall use TCP/IP over Ethernet. All devices shall:
  - a. Auto-sense 10/100 Mbps networks.
  - b. Receive an IP Address from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Server or be configured with a Fixed IP Address.
  - c. Resolve Name to IP Addresses for devices using a Domain Name Service (DNS) Server on the Ethernet network.
  - d. Allow MMI access to an individual Primary Network Controller using industry standard Telnet software to view and edit entire Primary Network.
5. The primary network shall provide the following minimum performance:
  - a. Provide high-speed data transfer rates for alarm reporting, report generation from multiple controllers and upload/download efficiency between network devices. System performance shall insure that an alarm occurring at any Building Controller is displayed at any PC workstations, all Building controllers, and other alarm printers within 15 seconds.
  - b. Message and alarm buffering to prevent information from being lost.
  - c. Error detection, correction, and re-transmission to guarantee data integrity.
  - d. Synchronization of real-time clocks between Building Controllers, including automatic daylight savings time corrections.

- e. The primary network shall allow the Building Controllers to access any data from, or send control commands and alarm reports directly to, any other Building Controller or combination of controllers on the network without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. Building Controllers shall send alarm reports to multiple operator workstations without dependence upon a central or intermediate processing device. The network shall also allow any Building controller to access, edit, modify, add, delete, back up, restore all system point database and all programs.
  - f. The primary network shall allow the Building Controllers to assign password access and control priorities to each point individually. The logon password (at any PC workstation or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust and control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the PC workstation or portable terminal. (e.g. all base building and all tenant points shall be accessible to any base building operators, but only certain base building and tenant points shall be accessible to tenant building operators). Passwords and priorities for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
  - g. Devices containing custom programming shall reside on the Primary Network
- F. Secondary Network – Application Specific Controller Communication:
- 1. Communication over the secondary network shall be the manufacturer's standard protocol.
  - 2. Communication over the secondary network shall be BACnet MS/TP protocol.
  - 3. Communication over the secondary network shall be LonTalk protocol.
  - 4. Communication over the secondary network shall utilize a wireless MESH topology based on an IEEE 802.15.4 network. Point to point communication shall not be unacceptable.
  - 5. This level communication shall support a family of application specific controllers for terminal equipment.
  - 6. The Application Specific Controllers shall communicate bi-directionally with the primary network through Building Controllers for transmission of global data.

7. A maximum of 30 terminal equipment controllers may be configured on individual secondary network trunks to insure adequate global data and alarm response times.

G. Internet Based Communication:

1. Web Based Operator Interface

- a. The BMS shall provide a web based graphical interface that allows users to access the BMS data via the Internet, extranet, or Intranet. The interface shall use HTML based ASP pages to send and receive data from the BMS to a web browser.
- b. A web server computer will be supplied. The web server shall use Microsoft's IIS server 4.0 with Windows NT4, or IIS 5.0 with Windows 2000, and support browser access via Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 (or higher), or Navigator Netscape 6.0 (or higher).
- c. All information exchanged over Internet shall be optionally encrypted and secure via SSL (provided by Owner).
- d. Access to the web interface may be password protected. Users' rights and privileges to points and graphics will be the same as those assigned at the BMS workstation. An option will exist to only allow users "read" access via the web browser, while maintaining "command" privileges via the BMS workstation.
- e. The web interface shall not require modification or creation of HTML or ASP pages using an HTML editor. All graphics available at the BMS graphical workstation shall be automatically generated to a web server.
- f. The web based interface shall provide the following functionality to users, based on their access and privilege rights:
  - 1) Logon Screen - allows the user to enter their name, password and domain name for logging into the web server.
  - 2) Alarm Display - a display of current BMS System alarms to which the user has access will be displayed. Users will be able to acknowledge and erase active alarms, and link to additional alarm information including alarm messages. Any alarm acknowledgments initiated through the web interface will be recorded to the BMS System activity log.

- 3) Graphic Display - Display of system graphics, including animated motion, available in the BMS system workstation will be available for viewing over the web browser. Software that requires the creation of dedicated “web” graphics in order to display via the browser interface will not be acceptable. A graphic selector list will allow users to select any graphics to which they have access. Graphics displays will automatically refresh with the latest change of values. Users will have the ability to command and override points from the graphic display as determined by their user account rights.
  - 4) Point Details - users will have access to point detail information including operational status, operational priority, physical address, and alarm limits, for point objects to which they have access.
  - 5) Point Commanding - users will be able to override and command points they have access to via the web browser interface. Any commands or overrides initiated via the web browser interface will be written to the BMS system central workstation activity log.
- g. The web server licensing options will allow concurrent access by a minimum of five (5) browser connections.
  - h. Internet connections, ISP services, as well as necessary firewalls or proxy servers shall be provided by the owner as required to support the web access feature.
2. Terminal Services Operator Interface
    - a. Client access to client-server workstation configurations over low-bandwidth network technologies shall be available optionally via Windows Terminal Services or Web browser interface. Remote client access via Windows Terminal Services shall provide multiple, independent sessions of the workstations software – Terminal Services clients shall have workstation software access, without the need to install the workstation software on the local hard drive]

H. Remote Notification Paging System:

1. Workstations shall be configured to send out messages to numeric pagers, alphanumeric pagers, phones (via text to speech technology), SMS (Simple Messaging Service, text messaging) Devices, and email accounts based on a point's alarm condition.
2. There shall be no limit to the number of points that can be configured for remote notification of alarm conditions and no limit on the number of remote devices which can receive messages from the system.
3. On a per point basis, system shall be configurable to send messages to an individual or group and shall be configurable to send different messages to different remote devices based on alarm message priority level.
4. Remote devices may be scheduled as to when they receive messages from the system to account for operators' work schedules.
5. System shall be configurable to send messages to an escalation list so that if the first device does not respond, the message is sent on to the next device after a configurable time has elapsed.
6. Message detail shall be configurable on a per user basis.
7. During a "flood" of alarms, remote notification messages shall have the ability to optimize several alarms into an individual remote notification message.
8. Workstation shall have the ability to send manual messages allowing an operator to type in a message to be sent immediately.
9. Workstation shall have a feature to send a heartbeat message to periodically notify users that they have communication with the system.

I. Wireless Communications

1. Wireless communications shall take place using modular wireless transceivers at each device that eliminate the need for a physical network communication cable.
  - a. The wireless transceiver shall utilize 2.4 GHz in the license free global Industrial Scientific & Medical (ISM) band for greater bandwidth.
  - b. The wireless transceiver shall be encased in a plenum-rated enclosure. If the application dictates, the wireless transceiver shall be able to be installed in a metal enclosure utilizing a remote mounted antenna.

- c. The wireless transceiver channel shall be factory set and capable of being field set to a different channel if interference with IEEE 802.11 devices or other 2.4 GHz products is encountered.
- d. The wireless transceiver shall be 24 VAC powered.
- e. The wireless transceiver shall give a visual indication that it is powered and communicating.
- f. The wireless transceiver shall have a field settable network identifier that allows multiple networks to occupy the same channel for maximum scalability.

## 2.03 Operator Interface:

### A. Operator Interface Software:

#### 1. Basic Interface Description

- a. Operator interface software shall minimize operator training through the use of user-friendly and interactive graphical applications, 30-character English language point identification, on-line help, and industry standard Windows application software. Interface software shall simultaneously communicate with and share data between Ethernet-connected building level networks.
- b. Provide a graphical user interface that shall minimize the use of keyboard through the use of a mouse or similar pointing device, with a "point and click" approach to menu selection and a "drag and drop" approach to inter-application navigation.
- c. The navigation shall be user friendly by utilizing "forward & back" capability between screens and embedded hyperlinks to open graphics, documents, drawings, etc.
- d. Selection of applications within the operator interface software shall be via a graphical toolbar menu – the application toolbar menu shall have the option to be located in a docked position on any of the four sides of the visible desktop space on the workstation display monitor, and the option to automatically hide itself from the visible monitor workspace when not being actively manipulated by the user.
- e. The graphical toolbar menu shall have the option of adding additional user definable buttons that can launch local or network



programs, files, folders on Internet/Intranet addresses external to the BMS software.

- f. The software shall provide a multi-tasking type environment that allows the user to run several applications simultaneously. BMS software shall run on a Windows XP, 2000, or comparable 32 bit operating system. System database parameters shall be stored within an object-oriented database. Standard Windows applications shall run simultaneously with the BMS software. The mouse or Alt-Tab keys shall be used to quickly select and switch between multiple applications. The operator shall be able to work in Microsoft Word, Excel, and other Windows based software packages, while concurrently annunciating on-line BMS alarms and monitoring information
- g. The software shall provide, as a minimum, the following functionality:
  - 1) Real-time graphical viewing and control of the BMS environment
  - 2) Reporting
  - 3) Scheduling and override of building operations
  - 4) Collection and analysis of historical data
  - 5) Point database editing, storage and downloading of controller databases.
  - 6) Utility for combining points into logical Point Groups. The Point Groups shall then be manipulated in Graphics, trend graphs and reports in order to streamline the navigation and usability of the system.
  - 7) Alarm reporting, routing, messaging, and acknowledgment
  - 8) "Collapsible tree," dynamic system architecture diagram application:
    - a) Showing the real-time status and definition details of all workstations and devices on a management level network
    - b) Showing the real-time status and definition details of all Building Controllers at the Primary Network.

- c) Showing the definition details of all application specific controllers
- 9) Definition and construction of dynamic color graphic displays.
- 10) Online, context-sensitive help, including an index, glossary of terms, and the capability to search help via keyword or phrase.
- 11) On-screen access to User Documentation, via online help or PDF-format electronic file.
- 12) Automatic database backup at the operator interface for database changes initiated at Building Controllers.
- 13) Display dynamic trend data graphical plot.
  - a) Shall be able to run multiple plots simultaneously
  - b) Each plot shall be capable of supporting 10 pts/plot minimum
  - c) Shall be able to command points directly off dynamic trend plot application.
  - d) Shall be able to plot both real-time and historical trend data
- 14) Program editing
- 15) Report output shall have the option to be sent to an email address or group of email addresses.
- 16) Transfer trend data to 3rd party spreadsheet software
  - a) Scheduling reports
  - b) Operator Activity Log
  - c) Open communications via OPC Server
  - d) Open communications via BACnet Client & Server
- h. Enhanced Functionality:

- 1) Provide functionality such that any of the following may be performed simultaneously on-line, and in any combination, via adjustable user-sized windows. Operator shall be able to drag and drop information between the following applications, reducing the number of steps to perform a desired function (e.g., Click on a point on the alarm screen and drag it to the dynamic trend graph application to initiate a dynamic trend on the desired point):
    - a) Dynamic color graphics application
    - b) Alarm management application
    - c) Scheduling application
    - d) Dynamic trend graph data plotter application
    - e) Dynamic system architecture diagram application
    - f) Control Program and Point database editing applications
    - g) Reporting applications
  - 2) Report and alarm printing shall be accomplished via Windows Print Manager, allowing use of network printers.
- i. Security: Operator-specific password access protection shall be provided to allow the administrator/manager to limit users' workstation control, display and data base manipulation capabilities as deemed appropriate for each user, based upon an assigned password. Operator privileges shall "follow" the operator to any workstation logged onto (up to 999 user accounts shall be supported). The administrator or manager shall be able to grant discrete levels of access and privileges, per user, for each point, graphic, report, schedule, and BMS workstation application. And each BMS workstation user account shall use a Windows Operating System user account as a foundation.
  - j. The operator interface software shall also include an application to track the actions of each individual operator, such as alarm acknowledgement, point commanding, schedule overriding, database editing, and logon/logoff. The application shall list each of the actions in a tabular format, and shall have sorting capabilities based on parameters such as ascending or descending

time of the action, or name of the object on which the action was performed. The application shall also allow querying based on object name, operator, action, or time range.

- k. Dynamic Color Graphics application shall include the following:
  - 1) Shall include graphic editing and modifying capabilities
  - 2) A library of standard control application graphics and symbols shall be included
  - 3) Shall be able to command points directly off graphics application
  - 4) Graphic display shall include the ability to depict real-time point values dynamically with animation, picture/frame control, symbol association, or dynamic informational text-blocks
  - 5) Navigation through various graphic screens shall be optionally achieved through a hierarchical “tree” structure
  - 6) Graphics viewing shall include zoom capabilities
  - 7) Graphics shall be capable of displaying the status of points that have been overridden by a field HAND switch, for points that have been designed to provide a field HAND override capability.
  - 8) Advanced linking within the Graphics application shall provide the ability to navigate to outside documents (e.g., .doc, .pdf, .xls, etc.), Internet web addresses, e-mail, external programs, and other workstation applications, directly from the Graphics application window with a mouse-click on a customizable link symbol.
- l. Reports shall be generated on demand or via pre-defined schedule, and directed to CRT displays, printers, file or email address. As a minimum, the system shall allow the user to easily obtain the following types of reports:
  - 1) A general listing of all or selected points in the network
  - 2) List of all points currently in alarm
  - 3) List of all points currently in override status

- 4) List of all disabled points
  - 5) List of all points currently locked out
  - 6) List of user accounts and access levels
  - 7) List all weekly schedules and events
  - 8) List of holiday programming
  - 9) List of control limits and deadbands
  - 10) Custom reports from 3rd party software
  - 11) System diagnostic reports including, list of Building panels on line and communicating, status of all Building terminal unit device points
  - 12) List of programs
  - 13) List of point definitions
  - 14) List of logical point groups
  - 15) List of alarm strategy definitions
  - 16) List of Building Control panels
  - 17) Point totalization report
  - 18) Point Trend data listings
  - 19) Initial Values report
  - 20) User activity report
- m. Scheduling and override
- 1) Provide a calendar type format for simplification of time and date scheduling and overrides of building operations. Schedule definitions reside in the PC workstation and in the Building Controller to ensure time equipment scheduling when PC is off-line, PC is not required to execute time scheduling. Provide override access through menu

selection, graphical mouse action or function key. Provide the following capabilities as a minimum:

- a) Weekly schedules
  - b) Zone schedules
  - c) Event schedules – an event consists of logical combinations of equipment and/or zones
  - d) Report schedules
  - e) Ability to schedule for a minimum of up to ten (10) years in advance.
- 2) Additionally, the scheduling application shall:
- a) Provide filtering capabilities of schedules, based on name, time, frequency, and schedule type (event, zone, report)
  - b) Provide sorting capabilities of schedules, based on name, time and type of schedule (zone, event, report)
  - c) Provide searching capabilities of schedules based on name – with wildcarding options
- n. Collection and Analysis of Historical Data
- 1) Provide trending capabilities that allow the user to easily monitor and preserve records of system activity over an extended period of time. Any system point may be trended automatically at time-based intervals (up to four time-based definitions per point) or change of value, both of which shall be user-definable. Trend data shall be collected stored on hard disk for future diagnostics and reporting. Automatic Trend collection may be scheduled at regular intervals through the same scheduling interface as used for scheduling of zones, events, and reports. Additionally, trend data may be archived to network drives or removable disk media for future retrieval.
  - 2) Trend data reports shall be provided to allow the user to view all trended point data. Reports may be customized to include individual points or predefined groups of selected

points. Provide additional functionality to allow predefined groups of up to 250 trended points to be easily transferred on-line to Microsoft Excel. Provide custom designed spreadsheet reports for use by the owner to track energy usage and cost, equipment run times, equipment efficiency, and/or building environmental conditions. Provide setup of custom reports including creation of data format templates for monthly or weekly reports.

- 3) Provide additional functionality that allows the user to view real-time trend data on trend graphical plot displays. A minimum of ten points may be plotted, of either real-time or historical data. The dynamic graphs shall continuously update point values. At any time the user may redefine sampling times or range scales for any point. In addition, the user may pause the display and take "snapshots" of plot screens to be stored on the workstation disk for future recall and analysis. Exact point values may be viewed and the graphs may be printed. A minimum of ten (10) dynamic graphs shall run simultaneously. Operator shall be able to command points directly on the trend plot by double clicking on the point. Operator shall be able to zoom in on a specific time range within a plot. The dynamic trend plotting application shall support the following types of graphs, with option to graph in 3D: line graph, area graph, curve graph, area-curve graph, step graph, and scatter graph. Each graph may be customized by the user, for graph type, graph text, titles, line styles and weight, colors, and configurable x- and y-axes.
- 4) Provide additional functionality that allows the user to display trend data for points from a graphic, alarm status screen, or a displayed point log report.

o. Dynamic Color Graphic Displays

- 1) Capability to create color graphic floor plan displays and system schematics for each piece of mechanical equipment, including, but not limited to, air handling units, chilled water systems, hot water boiler systems, and room level terminal units.
- 2) The operator interface shall allow users to access the various system schematics and floor plans via a graphical penetration scheme, menu selection, point alarm association, or text-based commands. Graphics software

shall permit the importing of AutoCAD or scanned pictures for use in the system.

- 3) Dynamic temperature values, humidity values, flow values and status indication shall be shown in their actual respective locations within the system schematics or graphic floor plan displays, and shall automatically update to represent current conditions without operator intervention and without pre-defined screen refresh rates.
  - a) Provide the user the ability to display real-time point values by animated motion or custom picture control visual representation. Animation shall depict movement of mechanical equipment, or air or fluid flow. Picture Control shall depict various positions in relation to assigned point values or ranges. A library (set) of animation and picture control symbols shall be included within the operator interface software's graphics application. Animation shall reflect, ON or OFF conditions, and shall also be optionally configurable for up to five rates of animation speed.
  - b) Sizable analog bars shall be available for monitor and control of analog values; high and low alarm limit settings shall be displayed on the analog scale. The user shall be able to "click and drag" the pointer to change the setpoint.
  - c) Provide the user the ability to display blocks of point data by defined point groups; alarm conditions shall be displayed by flashing point blocks.
  - d) Equipment state or values can be changed by clicking on the associated point block or graphic symbol and selecting the new state (on/off) or setpoint.
  - e) State text for digital points can be user-defined up to eight characters.
  - f) Provide the user the ability to display trend data from the graphic screen through right click feature selection.



- 4) Colors shall be used to indicate status and change as the status of the equipment changes. The state colors shall be user definable.
- 5) Advanced linking within the Graphics application shall provide the ability to navigate to outside documents (e.g., .doc, .pdf, .xls, etc.), Internet web addresses, e-mail, external programs, and other workstation applications, directly from the Graphics application window with a mouse-click on a customizable link symbol.
- 6) The Windows environment of the PC operator workstation shall allow the user to simultaneously view several applications at a time to analyze total building operation or to allow the display of a graphic associated with an alarm to be viewed without interrupting work in progress.
- 7) Off the shelf graphic software shall be provided to allow the user to add, modify or delete system graphic background displays.
- 8) A clipart library of HVAC application and automation symbols shall be provided including fans, valves, motors, chillers, AHU systems, standard ductwork diagrams and laboratory symbols. The user shall have the ability to add custom symbols to the clipart library. The clipart library shall include a minimum of 400 application symbols. In addition, a library consisting of a minimum of 700 graphic background templates shall be provided.
- 9) The Graphics application shall include a set of standard Terminal Equipment controller application-specific background graphic templates. Templates shall provide the automatic display of a selected Terminal Equipment controller's control values and parameters, without the need to create separate and individual graphic files for each controller.
- 10) The graphic application shall provide a tool be able to change full or partial point names on a graphic.

p. System Configuration & Definition

- 1) A "Collapsible tree," dynamic system architecture diagram/display application of the site-specific BMS architecture showing status of controllers, PC workstations

and networks shall be provided. This application shall include the ability to add and configure workstations, Building Controllers, as well as 3rd-party integrated components. Symbols/Icons representing the system architecture components shall be user-configurable and customizable, and a library of customized icons representing 3rd-party integration solutions shall be included. This application shall also include the functionality for real-time display, configuration and diagnostics connections to Building Controllers.

- 2) Network wide control strategies shall not be restricted to a single Building Controller, but shall be able to include data from any and all other network panels to allow the development of Global control strategies.
- 3) Provide automatic backup and restore of all Building controller databases on the workstation hard disk. In addition, all database changes shall be performed while the workstation is on-line without disrupting other system operations. Changes shall be automatically recorded and downloaded to the appropriate Building Controller. Changes made at the user-interface of Building Controllers shall be automatically uploaded to the workstation, ensuring system continuity.
- 4) System configuration, programming, editing, graphics generation shall be performed on-line.
- 5) Point database configuration shall be available to the user within a dedicated point database editor application included in the operator interface software. The editor shall allow the user to create, view existing, modify, copy, and delete points from the database.
- 6) The point editor shall have the capability to assign “informational text” to points as necessary to provide critical information about the equipment.
- 7) The point editor shall also allow the user to configure the alarm management strategy for each point. The editor shall provide the option for editing the point database in an online or offline mode with the Building Controllers.
- 8) The operator interface software shall also provide the capability to perform bulk modification of point definition

attributes to a single or multiple user-selected points. This function shall allow the user to choose the properties to copy from a selected point to another point or set of points. The selectable attributes shall include, but are not limited to, Alarm management definitions and Trend definitions.

- 9) Control program configuration shall be available to the user within a dedicated control program editor application included in the operator interface software. The editor shall allow for creation, modification and deletion of control programs. The editor shall include a programming assistance feature that interactively guides the user through parameters required to generate a control program. The editor shall also include the ability to automatically compile the program to ensure its compatibility with the Building Controllers. The editor shall provide the option for editing the control programs in an online or offline mode, and also the ability to selectively enable or disable the live program execution within the Building Controllers. Additional compiler checks shall be built into the program editor which assists in the verification of valid GOTO statements. The additional compiler check shall also verify if each point in the program was defined in another panel.

q. Alarm Management

- 1) Alarm Routing shall allow the user to send alarm notification to selected printers or workstation location(s) based on time of day, alarm severity, or point type.
- 2) Alarm Notification shall be presented to each workstation in a tabular format application, and shall include the following information for each alarm point: name, value, alarm time & date, alarm status, priority, acknowledgement information, and alarm count. Each alarm point or priority shall have the ability to sound a discrete audible notification.
- 3) Alarm Display shall have the ability to list & sort the alarms based on alarm status, point name, ascending or descending alarm time.
- 4) Directly from the Alarm Display, the user shall have the ability to acknowledge, silence the alarm sound, print, or erase each alarm. The interface shall also have the option to inhibit the erasing of active acknowledged alarms, until

they have returned to normal status. The user shall also have the ability to command, launch an associated graphic or trended graphical plot, or run a report on a selected alarm point directly on the Alarm Display.

- 5) Each alarm point shall have a direct link from the Alarm Display to further user-defined point informational data. The user shall have the ability to also associate real-time electronic annotations or notes to each alarm.
- 6) Alarm messages shall be customizable for each point, or each alarm priority level, to display detailed instructions to the user regarding actions to take in the event of an alarm. Alarm messages shall also have the optional ability to individually enunciate on the workstation display via a separate pop-up window, automatically being generated as the associated alarm condition occurs. The system shall have the ability to modify the priority text based on operator preference.
- 7) Alarm Display application shall allow workstation operators to send and receive real-time messages to each other, for purposes of coordinating Alarm and BMS system management.

r. Remote notification of messages

- 1) Operator Interface software shall be configured to send out messages to numeric pagers, alphanumeric pagers, phones (via text to speech technology), SMS (Simple Messaging Service, text messaging) Devices, and email accounts based on a point's alarm condition.
- 2) There shall be no limit to the number of points that can be configured for remote notification of alarm conditions and no limit on the number of remote devices which can receive messages from the system.
- 3) On a per point basis, system shall be configurable to send messages to an individual or group and shall be configurable to send different messages to different remote devices based on alarm message priority level.
- 4) Remote devices may be scheduled as to when they receive messages from the system to account for operators' work schedules.

- 5) System shall be configurable to send messages to an escalation list so that if the first device does not respond, the message is sent on to the next device after a configurable time has elapsed.
- 6) Message detail shall be configurable on a per user basis.
- 7) During a “flood” of alarms, remote notification messages shall have the ability to optimize several alarms into an individual remote notification message.
- 8) Workstation shall have the ability to send manual messages allowing an operator to type in a message to be sent immediately.
- 9) Workstation shall have a feature to send a heartbeat message to periodically notify users that they have communication with the system.

B. WEB BASED OPERATOR INTERFACE

1. Operator shall be able to access the field panel embedded Web server remotely using MS Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.
2. Internet connections, ISP services, as well as necessary firewalls or proxy servers shall be provided by the Owner as required to support the web access feature.

2.04 Building Controller Software

A. General

1. Furnish the following applications software to form a complete operating system for building and energy management as described in this specification.
2. The software programs specified in this Section shall be provided as an integral part of Building Controllers and shall not be dependent upon any higher level computer or another controller for execution.
3. All points, panels and programs shall be identified by a 30 character name. All points shall also be identified by a 16 character point descriptor. The same names shall be displayed at both Building Controller and the Operator Interface.

4. All digital points shall have a user defined two-state status indication with 8 characters minimum (e.g. Summer, Enabled, Disabled, Abnormal).
5. Building Controllers shall have the ability to perform energy management routines including but not limited to time of day scheduling, calendar-based scheduling, holiday scheduling, temporary schedule overrides, start stop time optimization, automatic daylight savings time switch over, night setback control, enthalpy switch over, peak demand limiting, temperature-compensated duty cycling, heating / cooling interlock, supply temperature reset, priority load shedding, and power failure restart.
6. The Building Controllers shall have the ability to perform the following pre tested control algorithms:
  - a. Two position control
  - b. Proportional control
  - c. Proportional plus integral control
  - d. Proportional, integral, plus derivative control
  - e. Automatic tuning of control loops
  - f. Model-Free Adaptive Control
7. Each controller shall be provided with an interactive HELP function to assist operators using POTs and remote connected operators.
8. Building Controllers shall not be susceptible to Microsoft Windows operating systems based viruses.

B. Web Based Operator Interface:

1. The BAS shall provide a Web based graphical interface that allows users to access the BAS data via the Internet, extranet, or Intranet (TCP/IP). The Web based graphical interface shall use HTML-based pages to send and receive data directly from a network of BAS Field Panels to a web browser. Dedicated PC-based Web servers or separate "Web Appliance" devices may be allowed for this purpose.
2. The Web server shall allow monitor and control to any field panels networked together on the same automation level TCP/IP network.

- a. The web server shall provide a common alarm display that shows alarms in all field panels on the network.
  - b. The web server shall be able to provide common graphics that simultaneously display the current value and status for points residing in multiple field panels.
  - c. The web server shall be able to display daily mode schedules for points from multiple field panels simultaneously.
3. The Web server shall support browser access via Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 (or later), with “cookies” enabled and compatible Microsoft Java Applet (JVM) installed.
4. Access to the Web interface shall be username and password protected. A user’s rights and privileges to database objects within the BAS shall be configurable on a per-user basis. An option shall exist to only allow users “read” access to BAS objects via the web browser. Operator sessions shall be configurable for “auto-logout” after a designated period of user inactivity.
5. The embedded Web server shall support an unlimited number of user accounts. Up to two concurrent user sessions shall be available for simultaneous operator access to the Web server’s pages.
6. The embedded Web server shall be compatible with and allow coexistence within standard IT security policies and tools (e.g., Firewall protection).
7. The embedded Web server shall provide the following functionality to users via Web browser, based on their access and privilege rights:
  - a. Logon Screen – allows the user to enter his user name and password for logging into the Web server.
  - b. Alarm Display – a display of current BAS alarms to which the user has access will be displayed. Users will be able to acknowledge active alarms, erase resolved alarms, and directly link to the Point Commanding feature.
    - 1) The alarm display shall provide a filter that displays all alarms whether acknowledged or not.
    - 2) The alarm display shall provide a filter that displays only alarms that have not yet been acknowledged.

- 3) The alarm display shall provide a persistent indication whenever there is one or more unacknowledged alarm in any connected field panel.
- c. Graphic Display – Display of system graphics shall be available for viewing over the Web browser. A graphic selector list will allow users to select any graphics to which they have access. Graphic displays will automatically refresh with the latest change of values. Users will have the ability to command and override points directly from the graphic display as determined by their user accounts rights. The Graphic Display shall accommodate up to 10 customized graphics, plus any Application-specific graphics related to the Application Specific Controllers encompassed by the system.
    - 1) The web server shall allow users to create at least one graphic online through the Web interface without requiring the use of external software programming tool.
  - d. Point details – users will have access to point detail information including operational status, operational priority, physical address, and alarm limits, for point objects to which they have access rights.
  - e. Point Commanding – users will be able to override and command points they have access to via the web browser interface.
  - f. Scheduling – shall allow operators, depending on their current user privileges, to override schedules selected by date, and to modify the properties of a selected schedule.
    - 1) The scheduler display shall be able to represent facility mode schedules in a graphical format.
  - g. Point Status Report – allows users to run and print a pre-configured point log report through a web interface client that shows the point name, descriptor, command priority, alarm status, and current value. The report shall allow selection of individual points or wildcard selection of points.
  - h. Trend Data Report – allows users to run and print a pre-configured trend data report for historical data reporting, including a representation of the alarm status of the each point for each Trend sample. The report shall allow selection of individual points or wildcard selection of points.



- i. Internet connections, ISP services, as well as necessary firewalls or proxy servers shall be provided by the Owner as required to support the web access feature.

C. System Security

1. User access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
2. Passwords shall restrict the user to the objects, applications, and system functions as assigned by the system manager.
3. Building Controllers shall be able to assign a minimum of 50 passwords access and control priorities to each point individually. The logon password (at any Operator Interface or portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust and control only the points that the operator is authorized for. All other points shall not be displayed at the Operator Interface or portable terminal. Passwords and priorities for every point shall be fully programmable and adjustable.
4. User Log On / Log Off attempts shall be recorded.
5. The system shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off following the last keystroke. The delay time shall be user-definable.
6. Use of workstation resident security as the only means of access control is not an acceptable alternative to resident system security in the field panel.

D. User Defined Control Applications

1. Controllers shall be able to execute custom, job-specific processes defined by the user, to automatically perform calculations and special control routines.
2. It shall be possible to use any system measured point data or status, any system calculated data, a result from any process, or any user-defined constant in any controller in the system.
3. Any process shall be able to issue commands to points in any and all other controllers in the system.
4. Processes shall be able to generate operator messages and advisories to other operator I/O devices. A process shall be able to directly send a

message to a specified device or cause the execution of a dial-up connection to a remote device such as a printer or pager.

5. Each controller shall support plain language text comment lines in the operating program to allow for quick troubleshooting, documentation, and historical summaries of program development.
6. Controller shall provide a HELP function key, providing enhanced context sensitive on-line help with task oriented information from the user manual.

E. Alarm Management

1. Alarm management shall be provided to monitor and direct alarm information to operator devices. Each Building Controller shall perform distributed, independent alarm analysis and filtering to minimize operator interruptions due to non-critical alarms, minimize network traffic and prevent alarms from being lost. At no time shall the Building Controllers ability to report alarms be affected by either operator or activity at a PC workstation, local I/O device or communications with other panels on the network.
2. Conditional alarming shall allow generation of alarms based upon user defined multiple criteria.
3. An Alarm “shelving” feature shall be provided to disable alarms during testing. (Pull the Plug, etc.).
4. Binary Alarms. Each binary object shall be set to alarm based on the operator-specified state. Provide the capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
5. Analog Alarms. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
6. All alarm or point change reports shall include the point's user defined language description and the time and date of occurrence.
7. The user shall be able to define the specific system reaction for each point. Alarms shall be prioritized to minimize nuisance reporting and to speed operator response to critical alarms. A minimum of six priority levels shall be provided for each point. Point priority levels shall be combined with user definable destination categories (PC, printer, Building Controller, etc.) to provide full flexibility in defining the handling of system alarms. Each Building Controller shall automatically inhibit the reporting of selected alarms during system shutdown and start-up. Users shall have the ability to manually inhibit alarm reporting for each point.

8. Alarm reports and messages shall be routed to user-defined list of operator workstations, or other devices based on time and other conditions. An alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in the event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.
9. In addition to the point's descriptor and the time and date, the user shall be able to print, display or store a 200 character alarm message to more fully describe the alarm condition or direct operator response.
  - a. Each Building Controller shall be capable of storing a library of at least 50 alarm messages. Each message may be assignable to any number of points in the Controller.
10. Operator-selected alarms shall be capable of initiating a call to a remote operator device.

F. Scheduling

1. Provide a comprehensive menu driven program to automatically start and stop designated object or group of objects in the system according to a stored time.
2. Schedules shall reside in the building controller and shall not rely on external processing or network.
3. It shall be possible to define a group of objects as a custom event (i.e. meeting, athletic activity, etc.). Events can then be scheduled to operate all necessary equipment automatically.
4. For points assigned to one common load group, it shall be possible to assign variable time delays between each successive start and stop within that group.
5. The operator shall be able to define the following information:
  - a. Time, day
  - b. Commands such as on, off, auto, etc.
  - c. Time delays between successive commands.
  - d. There shall be provisions for manual overriding of each schedule by an authorized operator.

6. It shall be possible to schedule calendar-based events up to one year in advance based on the following:
  - a. Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week. Each of these schedules should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer. When a group of objects are scheduled together as an Event, provide the capability to adjust the start and stop times for each member.
  - b. Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by the standard schedule for that day of the week.
  - c. Holiday Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules. These schedules may be placed on the scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year. The operator shall be able to define the length of each holiday period.

G. Peak Demand Limiting (PDL):

1. The Peak Demand Limiting (PDL) program shall limit the consumption of electricity to prevent electrical peak demand charges.
2. PDL shall continuously track the amount of electricity being consumed, by monitoring one or more electrical kilowatt-hour/demand meters. These meters may measure the electrical consumption (kWh), electrical demand (kW), or both.
3. PDL shall sample the meter data to continuously forecast the demand likely to be used during successive time intervals.
4. If the PDL forecasted demand indicates that electricity usage is likely to exceed a user preset maximum allowable level, then PDL shall automatically shed electrical loads.
5. Ability to initialize and restart the meter area directly from the workstation.

H. Temperature-compensated duty cycling.

1. The DCCP (Duty Cycle Control Program) shall periodically stop and start loads according to various patterns.

2. The loads shall be cycled such that there is a net reduction in both the electrical demands and the energy consumed.
- I. Automatic Daylight Savings Time Switchover: The system shall provide automatic time adjustment for switching to/from Daylight Savings Time.
- J. Night setback control. The system shall provide the ability to automatically adjust setpoints for night control.
- K. Economizer switchover. The Building Controller Software (BCS) shall control the position of the air handler relief, return, and outside air dampers. If the outside air dry bulb temperature falls below changeover set point the BCS will modulate the dampers to provide 100 percent outside air. The user will be able to quickly changeover to an economizer system based on dry bulb temperature and will be able to override the economizer cycle and return to minimum outside air operation at any time.
- L. Loop Control. A Model-Free Adaptive Control algorithm or alternatively a PID (proportional-integral-derivative) closed-loop control algorithm with direct or reverse action and anti-windup shall be supplied. The algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that is used to position an output or stage a series of outputs. The controlled variable, set point, and weighting parameters shall be user-selectable.
- M. Sequencing. Provide application software based upon the sequences of operation specified to properly sequence equipment.
- N. Staggered Start
  1. This application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. The order in which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be user definable.
  2. Upon the resumption of power, each Building Controller shall analyze the status of all controlled equipment, compare it with normal occupancy scheduling and turn equipment on or off as necessary to resume normal operations.
- O. Totalization
  1. Run-Time Totalization. Building Controllers shall automatically accumulate and store run-time hours for all digital input and output points. A high runtime alarm shall be assigned, if required, by the operator.

2. Consumption totalization. Building Controllers shall automatically sample, calculate and store consumption totals on a daily, weekly or monthly basis for all analog and digital pulse input type points.
3. Event totalization. Building Controllers shall have the ability to count events such as the number of times a pump or fan system is cycled on and off. Event totalization shall be performed on a daily, weekly or monthly basis for all points. The event totalization feature shall be able to store the records associated with events before reset.

P. Data Collection

1. A variety of historical data collection utilities shall be provided to manually or automatically sample, store, and display system data for all points.
2. Building Controllers shall store point history data for selected analog and digital inputs and outputs:
  - a. Any point, physical or calculated may be designated for trending. Any point, regardless of physical location in the network, may be collected and stored in each Building Controllers point group.
  - b. Two methods of collection shall be allowed: either by up to four pre-defined time intervals and/or upon a pre-defined change of value. Sample intervals of 1 minute to 7 days shall be provided.
  - c. Each Building Controller shall have a dedicated RAM-based buffer for trend data and shall be capable of storing a minimum of 10,000 data samples.
3. Trend data shall be stored at the Building Controllers and uploaded to the workstation when retrieval is desired. Uploads shall occur based upon either user-defined interval, manual command or when the trend buffers are full. All trend data shall be available for use in 3rd party personal computer applications.
4. Loop Tuning. Building Controllers shall also provide high resolution sampling capability for verification of DDC control loop performance. Documented evidence of tuned control loop performance shall be provided on a quarterly period.
  - a. For Model-Free Adaptive Control loops, evidence of tuned control loop performance shall be provided via graphical plots or trended data logs. Graphical plots shall minimally include depictions of setpoint, process variable (output), and control variable (e.g.,

temperature). Other parameters that may influence loop control shall also be included in the plot (e.g., fan on/off, mixed-air temp).

- b. For PID control loops, operator-initiated automatic and manual loop tuning algorithms shall be provided for all operator-selected PID control loops. Evidence of tuned control loop performance shall be provided via graphical plots or trended data logs for all loops.
  - 1) In automatic mode, the controller shall perform a step response test with a minimum one-second resolution, evaluate the trend data, calculate the new PID gains and input these values into the selected LOOP statement.
  - 2) Loop tuning shall be capable of being initiated either locally at the Building Controller, from a network workstation or remotely using dial-in modems. For all loop tuning functions, access shall be limited to authorized personnel through password protection.

## 2.05 Building Controllers

- A. Building Controllers shall be 32 bit, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time 48 MHz digital control processors consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, power supplies and input/output point modules. Controller size shall be sufficient to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the attached point list.
- B. Each Building Controller shall support a minimum of 3 directly connected Secondary Networks.
- C. Each Building Controller shall have sufficient memory, a minimum of 72 megabyte, to support its own operating system and databases, including control processes, energy management applications, alarm management applications, historical/trend data for points specified, maintenance support applications, custom processes, operator I/O, and dial-up communications.
- D. Building Controller shall have an integral real-time clock.
- E. Each Building Controller shall support firmware upgrades without the need to change hardware.
- F. Each Building Controller shall support:
  - 1. Monitoring of industry standard analog and digital inputs, without the addition of equipment outside the Building Controller cabinet.

2. Monitoring of industry standard analog and digital outputs, without the addition of equipment outside the Building Controller cabinet.
- G. Spare Point Capacity.
1. Each Building Controller shall have a minimum of 10 percent spare point capacity.
  2. The type of spares shall be in the same proportion as the implemented I/O functions of the panel, but in no case shall there be less than one spare of each implemented I/O type.
  3. Provide all processors, power supplies, and communication controllers so that the implementation of adding a point to the spare point location only requires the addition of the appropriate:
    - a. Expansion modules
    - b. Sensor/actuator
    - c. Field wiring/tubing.
- H. Serial Communication. Building Controllers shall provide at least two EIA-232C serial data communication ports for operation of operator I/O devices such as industry standard printers, operator terminals, and portable laptop operator's terminals. Building Controllers shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected printers or terminals.
- I. Manual Override. The operator shall have the ability to manually override automatic or centrally executed commands at the Building Controller via local, point discrete, integral hand/off/auto operator override switches for all digital control type points and gradual switches for all analog control type points. These override switches shall be operable whether the panel processor is operational or not. Each Building Controller shall monitor and alarm the hand, off and auto positions of integral HOA switches.
- J. I/O Status and Indication. Building Controllers shall provide local LED status indication for each digital input and output for constant, up-to-date verification of all point conditions without the need for an operator I/O device. Graduated intensity LEDs or analog indication of value shall also be provided for each analog output. All wiring connections shall be made to field-removable terminals.
- K. Self-Diagnostics. Each Building Controller shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and diagnosis of all panel components. The Building Controller shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any



detected component failures, low battery conditions or repeated failure to establish communication for any system.

- L. Power loss. In the event of the loss of power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all Building Controllers to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 100 hours.
- M. Environment.
  - 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
  - 2. Controllers used outdoors and/or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted within waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 49°C (32°F to 120°F).
  - 3. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-proof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 49°C (32°F to 120°F).
- N. Immunity to power and noise.
  - 1. Controller shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80% nominal voltage.
    - a. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).
  - 2. Isolation shall be provided at all primary network terminations, as well as all field point terminations to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
    - a. RF-Conducted Immunity (RFI) per ENV 50141 (IEC 1000-4-6) at 3 V
    - b. Electro Static Discharge (ESD) Immunity per EN 61000-4-2 (IEC 1000-4-2) at 8 kV air discharge, 4 kV contact
    - c. Electrical Fast Transient (EFT) per EN 61000-4-4 (IEC 1000-4-4) at 500 V signal, 1 kV power
    - d. Output Circuit Transients per UL 864 (2,400V, 10A, 1.2 Joule max)

3. Isolation shall be provided at all Building Controller's AC input terminals to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with:
  - a. IEEE Standard 587 1980
  - b. UL 864 Supply Line Transients
  - c. Voltage Sags, Surge, and Dropout per EN 61000-4-11 (EN 1000-4-11)
- O. Keypad. A local keypad and display shall be provided for each controller. The keypad shall be provided for interrogating and editing data. An optional system security password shall be available to prevent unauthorized use of the keypad and display.
- P. Minimum Approved Building Controllers.
  1. Furnish Building Controllers as listed below. Providing an approved controller does not release the contractor providing the work under this Section from meeting all performance, software and hardware specifications for Building Controllers and system operations.
  2. Siemens Building Technologies Inc. - Modular Building/Equipment Controllers (MBC/MEC).

## 2.06 Application Specific Controllers (ASC)

### A. General

1. Provide for control of each piece of equipment , including, but not limited to the following:
  - a. Variable Air Volume (VAV ) boxes
  - b. Reheat Coils (RH)
  - c. Fan Powered Boxes (FPB)
  - d. Unit Conditioners
  - e. Heat Pumps
  - f. Digital Energy Monitors

2. Each Building Controller shall be able to communicate with application specific controllers (ASCs) over the Secondary Network to control terminal equipment only.
3. The use of Secondary Network controllers with custom program applications to control AHU's, water systems, etc. is not acceptable.
4. Each ASC shall operate as a stand-alone controller capable of performing its specified control responsibilities independently of other controllers in the network. Each ASC shall be a microprocessor-based, multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor.
5. Each ASC shall include all point inputs and outputs necessary to perform the specified control sequences. The ASC shall accept input and provide output signals that comply with industry standards. Controllers utilizing proprietary control signals shall not be acceptable. Outputs utilized either for two-state, modulating floating, or proportional control, allowing for additional system flexibility.
6. Space Temperature Sensors. Each controller performing space temperature control shall be provided with a matching room temperature sensor.
  - a. The space temperature sensor shall be available in wired and wireless versions.
  - b. Wired Sensor specifications. The sensor may be either RTD or thermistor type providing the following.
    - 1) Accuracy: + .5 F
    - 2) Operating Range: 35 to 115 F
    - 3) Set Point Adjustment Range: 55 to 95 F
    - 4) Calibration Adjustments: None required
    - 5) Installation: Up to 100 ft. from controller
    - 6) Auxiliary Communications Port: as required
    - 7) Local LCD Temperature Display: as required
    - 8) Set Point Adjustment Dial as required
    - 9) Occupancy Override Switch as required

- c. Wireless Space Temperature Sensors specifications. The sensor shall be 100K Ohm Thermistor or equivalent type providing the following. [ID: 133]
  - 1) Accuracy: + .5 F
  - 2) Operating Range: 35 to 95 F
  - 3) Monitoring Range: 55 to 95 F
  - 4) Calibration Adjustments: None required
  - 5) Installation: Up to 100 ft. from controller
  - 6) Battery life: Minimum 3 years
  - 7) Auxiliary Communications Port: as required
- d. Set Point Modes:
  - 1) Independent Heating, Cooling
  - 2) Night Setback-Heating
  - 3) Night Setback-Cooling
- e. Auxiliary Communication Port. Each room temperature sensor shall include a terminal jack integral to the sensor assembly. The terminal jack shall be used to connect a portable operator's terminal to control and monitor all hardware and software points associated with the controller. RS-232 communications port shall allow the operator to query and modify operating parameters of the local room terminal unit from the portable operator's terminal.
- f. LCD Display. Interactive, two- line liquid crystal display shall allow the operator to query and modify operating parameters of the local room terminal unit from the room sensor. The display shall indicate the space temperature and associated ASC point when not being used to query or modify operating parameters.
- g. Set Point Adjustment Dial. The set point adjustment dial shall allow for modification of the temperature by the building operators. Set point adjustment may be locked out, overridden, or limited as to time or temperature through software by an authorized operator at any central workstation, Building

Controller, room sensor two-line display, or via the portable operator's terminal.

- h. **Override Switch.** An override switch shall initiate override of the night setback mode to normal (day) operation when activated by the occupant and enabled by building operators. The override shall be limited to two (2) hours (adjustable.) The override function may be locked out, overridden, or limited through software by an authorized operator at the operator interface, Building Controller, room sensor two-line display or via the portable operator's terminal.
- 7. **Communication.** Each controller shall perform its primary control function independent of other Secondary Network communication, or if Secondary Network communication is interrupted. Reversion to a fail-safe mode of operation during Secondary Network interruption is not acceptable.
- 8. **Control Algorithms.** The controller shall receive its real-time data from the Building Controller time clock to insure Secondary Network continuity. Each controller shall include algorithms incorporating proportional, integral and derivative (PID) gains for all applications. All PID gains and biases shall be field-adjustable by the user via room sensor LCD or the portable operator's terminal as specified herein. Controllers that incorporate proportional and integral (PI) control algorithms only shall not be acceptable.
- 9. **Control Applications.** Operating programs shall be field-selectable for specific applications. In addition, specific applications may be modified to meet the user's exact control strategy requirements, allowing for additional system flexibility. Controllers that require factory changes of all applications are not acceptable.
- 10. **Calibration.** Each controller shall include provisions for manual and automatic calibration of the differential pressure transducer in order to maintain stable control and insuring against drift over time.
  - a. Manual calibration may be accomplished by either commanding the actuator to 0% via the POT or by depressing the room sensor override switch. Calibration of the transducer at the controller location shall not be necessary
  - b. Calibration shall be accomplished by stroking the terminal unit damper actuator to a 0% position so that a 0 CFM air volume reading is sensed. The controller shall automatically accomplish

this whenever the system mode switches from occupied to unoccupied or vice versa.

- c. Calibration shall be accomplished by zeroing out the pressure sensor and holding damper at last known position until calibration is complete. The controller shall automatically accomplish this whenever the system mode switches from occupied to unoccupied or vice versa.

11. Memory:

- a. Provide each ASC with sufficient memory to accommodate point databases, operating programs, local alarming and local trending. All databases and programs shall be stored in non-volatile EEPROM, EPROM and PROM, or minimum of 72-hour battery backup shall be provided. The controllers shall be able to return to full normal operation without user intervention after a power failure of unlimited duration.
- b. Upon replacement, new ASCs shall recover control function and site specific defaults automatically and resume normal operation.

12. Power Supply. The ASCs shall be powered from a 24 VAC source and shall function normally under an operating range of 18 to 28 VAC, allowing for power source fluctuations and voltage drops. Power supply for the ASC shall be rated at a minimum of 125% of ASC power consumption and shall be of the fused or current limiting type. Provide 24 VAC power to the terminal units by utilizing:

- a. The existing line voltage power trunk and installing separate isolation transformers for each controller
- b. Dedicated line voltage power source and isolation transformers at a central location and installing 24VAC power trunk to supply multiple ASCs in the area.

13. Environment. The controllers shall function normally under ambient conditions of 32 to 122 F (0 to 50 C) and 10% to 95%RH (non-condensing). Provide each controller with a suitable cover or enclosure to protect the circuit board assembly.

14. Immunity to noise. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5-120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).

15. Manufacturer Installed Controls.

- a. BMS manufacturer shall furnish ASC and actuator for factory mounting to equipment manufacturer.
- b. Cost of factory mounting shall be borne by equipment manufacturer.
- c. For VAV terminals, equipment manufacturer shall provide and install flow-cross sensor, 24 Vac transformer, controls enclosure, fan relay, SCR and factory install, wire and tube ASC controller and actuator.
- d. Fan powered VAV terminals shall be equipped with a fan speed controller and relay to change summer and winter speed set point.

B. Digital Energy Monitors:

- 1. Provide three phase digital Watt-meters with pre-wired current transmitters. (CT) All Watt-meter electronics shall be housed within the CTs. CTs shall include sizes capable of mounting directly on a power bus. Diagnostics visible to the installing electrician (without an operator tool) shall indicate: proper operation, defective wiring or low power-factor, device malfunction, and over-load condition. The meters shall include the following:
- 2. The device shall be UL Listed, and shall comply with ANSI C12.1 accuracy specification. The minimum CT/meter combined accuracy shall be no greater than 1% of reading over the range of 5% to 100% of rated load. The meter shall not require calibration
- 3. The Watt-meter shall directly connect to power from 208 through 480 with no potential transformer. In-line fuses for each voltage tap phase shall be included.
  - a. The Watt-meter CTs shall be split-core and at minimum be sized to accommodate loads ranging from 100 to 2400 Amps. The CTs shall be volt-signal type, and shall not require shorting blocks.
  - b. The Watt-meter shall reside directly on the Secondary Network along with other Secondary Network devices. Data transferred shall include:
    - 1) kW & kWh
    - 2) Consumption
    - 3) Demand
    - 4) Power Factor

- 5) Current
- 6) Voltage
- 7) Apparent Power
- 8) Reactive Power

## 2.07 Input/Output Interface:

- A. Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into the system through building or application specific controllers.
- B. All input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground will cause no damage to the controller. All input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no damage to the controller.
- C. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of On/Off signals from remote devices. The binary inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against the effects of contact bounce and noise. Binary inputs shall sense “dry contact” closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
- D. Pulse accumulation input objects. This type of object shall conform to all the requirements of binary input objects and also accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation.
- E. Analog inputs shall allow the monitoring of low-voltage (0 to 10 VDC), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals (thermistor, RTD). Analog inputs shall be compatible with—and field configurable to—commonly available sensing devices.
- F. Binary outputs shall provide for On/Off operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Binary outputs on building and custom application controllers shall have three-position (On/Off/Auto) override switches and status lights. Outputs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
- G. Analog outputs shall provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0 to 10 VDC, 4 to 20 mA or 0-20 PSI signal as required to provide proper control of the output device. Analog outputs on building or custom application controllers shall have status lights and a two-position (AUTO/MANUAL) switch and manually adjustable potentiometer for manual override. Analog outputs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4% of range per year.



- H. Tri-State Outputs. Provide tri-state outputs (two coordinated binary outputs) for control of three-point floating type electronic actuators without feedback. Use of three-point floating devices shall be limited to zone control and terminal unit control applications (VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, zone dampers, radiation, etc.). Control algorithms shall run the zone actuator to one end of its stroke once every 24 hours for verification of operator tracking.
- I. System Object Capacity. The system size shall be expandable to at least twice the number of input/ output objects required for this project. Additional controllers (along with associated devices and wiring) shall be all that is necessary to achieve this capacity requirement. The operator interfaces installed for this project shall not require any hardware additions or software revisions in order to expand the system.

## 2.08 Power Supplies and Line Filtering

- A. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.
- B. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0% line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50% load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand a 150% current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.
  - 1. Unit shall operate between 0°C and 50°C (32°F and 120°F). EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MILSTD 810C for shock and vibration.
  - 2. Line voltage units shall be UL recognized and CSA approved.
- C. Power line filtering.
  - 1. Provide transient voltage and surge suppression for all workstations and controllers either internally or as an external component. Surge protection shall have the following at a minimum:
    - a. Dielectric strength of 1000 volts minimum
    - b. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less
    - c. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater

- d. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or better at 40 Hz to 100 Hz.

## 2.09 Auxiliary Control Devices

### A. General:

- 1. Specified in this section are the following hard wired input/output devices connected to the Building Controller or ASC.
  - a. Automatic Dampers
  - b. Fire/Smoke Dampers
  - c. Electric Damper Actuators
  - d. Motorized Isolation Valves
  - e. Airflow Measuring Stations
  - f. Binary Temperature Devices
  - g. Temperature Sensors
  - h. Dew Point/Humidity Sensors
  - i. Pressure Sensors
  - j. Water Differential Pressure Sensors
  - k. Differential Pressure Switches
  - l. Analog Water Level Sensors
  - m. Water Leak Detection Systems
  - n. Audio/Visual Alarm Units
  - o. Water BTU Meters
  - p. Vortex Shedding Flow Meters
  - q. Indoor Air Quality (CO2/VOC) Space Sensors
  - r. Relays
  - s. Override Timers
  - t. Current Transformers
  - u. Voltage Transmitters
  - v. Voltage Transformers
  - w. Power Monitors
  - x. Current Switches
  - y. Pressure Electric Switches
  - z. Local Control panels
  - aa. Local User Display
- 2. Specified in this section are the following devices connected to the BMS using secondary network communication.
  - a. Water BTU Meters
  - b. Variable Frequency Drives (VFD)
  - c. Indoor Air Quality (CO2/VOC) Space Sensors
  - d. Power Monitors

B. Automatic Dampers

1. Dampers shall have 13 gauge galvanized frames of not less than 3" in width and blades of 14 gauge, equivalent thickness, galvanized steel roll formed airfoil type for low pressure drop and low noise generation and shall be adequately braced to form a rigid assembly where required in galvanized duct work. Dampers shall have blades not more 8" wide. Linkage and hardware shall be zinc plated steel and shall be concealed out of airstream within the damper frame. Damper blades and rods shall be installed in horizontal position.
2. In copper, aluminum and stainless steel duct work, damper material shall match the duct work material.
3. All dampers shall be of the proportioning or opposed blade type, and shall be motor operated. Dampers shall have continuous elastomer or stainless steel stops to avoid leakage. Bearings shall be corrosion resistant oil tight stainless steel sleeve type. All dampers shall be provided with continuous 3/16" x 1/2" closed cell neoprene gasket around perimeter of the frame and at interlocking blade edges to form an air tight seal. Blade seals shall be suitable for -76° F to 350°F mechanically locked into blade edge. Adhesive of clip on type are not acceptable. Axles shall be square or hexagonal positively locked into damper blade. Linkage shall be concealed out of airstream within the damper blade.
4. All dampers shall be constructed to provide a maximum leakage of 3-1/2%, with an approach velocity of 1500 fpm when closed against a pressure of 4 inches of water. Submit leakage and flow characteristic data for all dampers.
5. All outside air dampers, with the exception of the emergency generator dampers, shall automatically close in the event of a loss of power. Dampers on emergency generators shall automatically open on a loss of power.
6. All smoke dampers shall be constructed in accordance with UL standard 555S.
7. Dampers shall be Ruskin Model CD60, Imperial Model 800 or approved equal.

C. Fire/Smoke Dampers

1. Dampers shown on drawings designated as “F/SM” shall comply with the following. They shall have a U.L. label. Dampers shall be pneumatically operated combination fire and smoke Ruskin, Imperial or approved equal, provided with factory installed U.L. rated full sleeves. Provide air foil or “V” blade damper blades supported with shafts and stainless steel bearings to allow daily operation. Provide intermediate supports and bearings for damper blades more than 36” long. They shall conform to UL Standard 555 and 555S as leakage rated dampers in smoke control systems when closed shall be the equivalent of a 1-1/2 hour fire damper. Leakage shall conform to Class 2 with maximum leakage of 10 CFM/Sq. Ft. at 1” W.G. Damper actuators shall be provided with position indicator switches to enable remote status of open or closed positions (only those dampers designated in the electrical trade plans and specifications will be provided with position switches and will be wired for remote status and remote open/closed operation, but all dampers will be provided with position indicators for possible future use). Note that dampers which are controlled from a central fire command station shall be provided with a 212°F heat sensor with normally closed contacts (manual reset) to close and lock damper if open. Additionally, dampers shall be factory equipped with a second normally closed heat sensor correlating to the operator/actuator degradation temperature classification (250°F to 350°F, depending on actuator utilized). The second sensor is wired through a manual override switch on the central fire command station. Dampers which are not controlled from a central fire command station shall have a fusible link which melts on heat causing damper to close and lock in a closed position. The following will be accepted in lieu of the two firestats described. A resettable bimetallic link which opens on heat permitting damper to close and lock if open. This link may be re-engaged from fire command station at temperature of 150°F or less.
2. Dampers shown on drawings designated “SM” shall comply in all respects to F/S damper description including position indicating switches except they shall not be provided with a heat sensor or fusible link.

D. Electric Damper Actuators

1. General
  - a. The actuator shall have mechanical or electronic stall protection to prevent damage to the actuator throughout the rotation of the actuator.
  - b. Where shown, for power-failure/safety applications, an internal mechanical, spring-return mechanism shall be built into the actuator housing. Alternatively, an uninterruptible power supply

(UPS) may be provided. On terminal unit valves actuators capacitor driven fail action is permitted.

- c. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0 to 10 VDC or 0 to 20 mA control signal and provide a 2 to 10 VDC or 4 to 20 mA operating range.
- d. All 24 VAC/VDC actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
- e. All actuators shall have an external manual gear release to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered. Spring-return actuators with more than 7 Nm (60 in.-lb) torque capacity shall have a manual crank for this purpose.
- f. Electric actuators for emergency generator damper control shall be rated for 350 degree F. maximum operating temperature and capable to drive fully open and close within 15 seconds.

E. Motorized isolation valves

1. Butterfly Valves.

- a. Furnish automatic butterfly valves for isolation requirements as shown on the drawings or required herein. All butterfly valves shall have body ratings in accordance with the piping specifications. Valves shall be high performance, fully lugged with carbon steel body ANSI 150/300. Valves shall be rated for bubble tight dead end closure, with 316 stainless steel disc, stainless steel shaft and reinforced Teflon seat and seals.
- b. Motorized valves located outdoors or in areas subject to outdoor air conditions provide fail in place, electric operators with water proof enclosure, crankcase heater, and open and closed position limit switches. Valve and all accessories shall be constructed for outdoor use. All electrical devices shall be weather proof and NEMA 4 rated.
- c. All valves shall be provided with external position indicators and a speed control device to prevent too rapid closure.
- d. All valves shall be provided with manual override hand wheels for operating the valve.
- e. The valves shall be line size as shown on plans.

- f. Motorized isolation valves shall be Jamesbury 815/830L, Fisher, DeZurik Model HP II or Bray.

F. Ball Valves

1. Furnish automatic full port ball valves for isolation requirements on line sizes up to 2' as shown on the drawings or required herein. All ball valves shall have ANSI 250 body rating. Valves shall have bronze body and stainless steel trim.
2. Valves shall close against a differential pressure equal to the design pump head pressure plus 10%.
3. The valves shall fail to their safe position upon power loss as specified in the sequence of operation.
4. All valves shall be provided with manual override.
5. Provide valve position indicator end switches with the actuator.
6. The valves shall be line size as shown on plans.
7. Motorized isolation valves shall be Neptonic, DeZurik or Siemens.

G. Automatic Control Valves

1. General:
  - a. Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type single seated globe type for two-position or modulating service as shown. Valves shall meet ANSI Class IV leakage rating.
  - b. Body pressure rating and connection type construction shall conform to pipe, fitting and valve schedules. Where pressure and flow combinations exceed ratings for commercial valves and operators, industrial class valves and operators shall be provided.
  - c. Valve operators shall be of pneumatic or electric type.
  - d. The valves shall be quiet in operation and fail-safe in either normally open or normally closed position in the event of power failure.
  - e. Control valve operators shall be sized to close against a differential pressure equal to the design pump head plus 10 percent.

- f. Furnish differential pressure control valves for all water systems as shown on plans and/or specified in the sequence of operations.
  - g. Provide valves 2" and smaller with screwed end bronze bodies and stainless steel trim. Provide valves 2-1/2" and larger with flanged ends, cast iron body and stainless steel trim.
  - h. For modulating service that require large valve size (above 6"), such as cooling tower temperature bypass, chiller head pressure ,etc. where proper control with globe type control valve cannot be achieved or the application is not economical butterfly or v-port ball valves are allowed.
2. Water Valves:
- a. Control valves shall be of equal percentage flow characteristics for modulating service.
  - b. Sizing Criteria:
    - 1) Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil, 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, whichever is greater.
    - 2) Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil, 5 psi maximum.
    - 3) Differential pressure service: 70% of design flow and 50% of pump head.
    - 4) Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as scheduled on plans, or as follows:
      - a) Heating coils in air handlers: normally open.
      - b) Chilled water control valves: normally closed.
      - c) Differential pressure valves: normally open.
      - d) Terminal units: normally closed.
      - e) Other applications; as required by sequences of operation.

## H. Air Flow Measuring Stations

### 1. Fan Inlet Type:

- a. Provide where indicated on the plans, airflow measuring stations of fan inlet type. Airflow traverse probes shall be suitable for mounting in the inlet bell(s) of the indicated fan.
- b. Probes shall be provided with the appropriate end support brackets for mounting in the inlet bell(s). Where fans are of dual inlet type, two sets of inlet probes shall be provided.
- c. Fan inlet probes shall be provided with the fittings to allow for the connection of control tubing to the probe assemblies.
- d. Probes shall be capable of operating with an accuracy of 3% of actual volume over the fan operating range.
- e. The installation of the air flow measuring stations shall be coordinated with contractor providing the installation of sheet metal ductwork to ensure actual accuracy and accessibility for maintenance.
- f. The installation of the air flow measuring stations shall be coordinated with contractor providing the installation of sheet metal ductwork to ensure actual accuracy and accessibility for maintenance.
- g. Fan inlet probes shall be Tek-Air T-FP7000 or approved equal.

### 2. Duct Mounted Type:

- a. Provide where indicated on the plans, airflow traverse probes of the insertion type, capable of continuously measuring air volume in the duct served.
- b. Probes shall utilize multiple total and suction pressure measurement points, located along the length of the probe surface in accordance with ASHRAE recommendations for duct traversing.
- c. The probes shall provide measurement accuracy within  $\pm 2\%$  of actual velocity when used with the appropriate conversion formula.



- d. Probes shall be of cylindrical cross section and shall indicate no more than a  $\pm 3\%$  percent deviation from the centerline velocity at a yaw angles up to 30 degrees.
- e. Probes shall be constructed of extruded aluminum, unless dictated otherwise by service requirements. Probes over sixteen inches long shall be supported on the insertion end.
- f. Probe quantities for each location shall be sufficient to meet ASHRAE recommendations.
- g. The pressure drop created by the traverse probes shall not be greater ten percent of the velocity pressure at the maximum design flow.
- h. The probes shall not amplify sound levels in the duct. The manufacturer shall provide submittal data indicating the developed differential pressure and pressure loss at the minimum and maximum design air flows for each duct location.
- i. Traverse probes shall be Tek-Air model T-FP5000 or approved equal.

I. Binary temperature devices

1. Line-voltage space thermostat:

- a. Line-voltage thermostats shall be bimetal-actuated, snap acting SPDT contact, enclosed, UL listed for electrical rating. The thermostat cover shall provide exposed set point adjustment knob. The thermostat shall operate within the 55°F to 85°F setpoint range, with 2°F maximum differential.

2. Low-temperature safety thermostat:

- a. Low-limit air stream thermostats shall be UL listed, vapor pressure type, with a sensing element of 20 ft. minimum length. Element shall respond to the lowest temperature sensed by any 1 ft. section. The low-limit thermostat shall be automatic reset, SPDT type.

3. Aquastat:

- a. Strap-on type thermostats shall be provided for low or high temperature limit service on hot water or steam condensate pipes. The thermostats shall be UL listed, with a liquid-filled bulb type sensing element and capillary tubing. The thermostat shall operate

within the 20°F to 120°F, or 100°F to 240°F, setpoint range, with an adjustable 6°F differential.

- b. The low-limit thermostat shall be automatic reset, snap acting SPDT type with concealed set point adjustment.

J. Temperature sensors

1. Provide the following instrumentation as required by the monitoring, control and optimization functions. All temperature sensor shall use platinum RTD elements only, nickel or silicon are not acceptable. All control signals shall be via a 4-20 mA loop.
2. Room Temperature:
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +40/+90 F (+40/120 F for high temp alarms)
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
3. Liquid Immersion Temperature
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +20/+120 F or +70/+220 F
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustment none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
4. Duct (Single Point) Temperature
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +20/+120 F
  - b. Output signal 4-20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required
  - d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
  - e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
  - f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F
5. Duct (Averaging) Temperature
  - a. Temperature monitoring range +20/+120 F
  - b. Output signal 4 - 20 mA
  - c. Installation adjustments none required

- d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
- e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
- f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F

6. Outside Air Temperature

- a. Temperature monitoring range -50/+122
- b. Output signal 4-20 mA
- c. Installation adjustments none required
- d. Calibration adjustments zero & span
- e. Factory calibration point 70 deg F
- f. Accuracy at calibration point +0.5 F

K. Dew point/humidity sensors

1. Outside Air Dew Point Temperature

- a. Dew point monitoring range -40/+115 F DP, 12% to 99% RH
- b. Output signal 4-20 mA
- c. Calibration adjustments zero & span
- d. Factory calibration point 70 F
- e. Accuracy at calibration point +2.0 Fdp

2. Room/duct Relative Humidity

- a. Sensor Humidity range 0 to 100%
- b. Operating temperature 15 F to +170 F
- c. Accuracy +2% RH
- d. Sensing element Capacitive sensor
- e. Output signal 4-20 mA DC
- f. Installation adjustments zero & span
- g. Operating temperature 15 F to +170 F
- h. Voltage requirement 12-36 VDC

L. Pressure sensors

1. Air Static Pressure Sensor

- a. Duct Static range -.5 to + 7.5"wg
- b. Accuracy + .05" w.g.
- c. Output signal 4 - 20 mA

M. Water differential pressure sensor

- 1. Transducer shall have linear output signal. Zero and span shall be field adjustable.

2. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50% greater than calibrated span without damage.
3. Water pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and block and bleed valves.
4. Water differential pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Over range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 300 psi. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and three valve manifold.
5. Provide industrial grade differential pressure sensors for all differential pressure bypass valves. Sensor shall be factory calibrated for operating range and rated for system pressure. Provide manufacturers standard 316 stainless steel, 3 valve manifold and pressure gauges for supply and return pressures. Output shall be 4-20 ma. Sensor shall be Rosemount 1151DP, with 316 stainless steel or approved equal.

N. Differential pressure switches

1. Water Differential Pressure Switch

- a. Differential pressure type switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum), NEMA 1 enclosure, with scale range and differential suitable for intended application or as shown.
- b. The differential switches shall meet the following requirements:
  - 1) Range 8 to 70 psi
  - 2) Differential 3 psi
  - 3) Maximum differential pressure 200 psi
  - 4) Maximum pressure 325 psi

2. Air Differential Pressure Switch

- a. Differential pressure switches shall be diaphragm type, with die-cast aluminum housing and adjustable set point. Switch rating shall be a minimum 5 amps at 120 VAC. Switches shall be SPDT and be used for fan status as specified in the point schedule. Switch

pressure range shall be suited for application. (e.g. filter 0-2.0", fan status 0-5.0", etc.)

O. Analog water level sensors

1. Furnish and install full height, analog level sensors for each location as specified. Sensor shall provide 4-20ma signal in proportion to basin water level. Provide waterproof enclosure and mounting hardware as required. Sensor shall be Drexel Brook or equal.

P. Water leak detection system

1. General:

- a. Furnish and install a complete water detection system for each area specified. The system shall include electronic alarm and locating modules, sensing cable, graphic maps and all auxiliary equipment. The system shall simultaneously detect the presence of water at any point along the cables length, sound an alarm and pinpoint the distance to the leak. The sensing cable shall be of such construction that no metallic parts shall be exposed to the environment. The system shall provide pre-connectorized sensing cable and components. The system shall be UL listed and FM approved.
- b. The system shall be as manufactured by Raychem Corporation or equal.
- c. Locating leak detection panel (TTB-FA)
- d. The alarm and locator module, TTB-FA, shall monitor up to a maximum of 1000 feet of sensing cable. The alarm module shall indicate that water has contacted the sensing cable by sounding an audible alarm, actuating an output relay, sending a proportional 4-20 mA signal to the BMS and displaying the distance from the start of the sensing cable to the start of the first contact with water. The location of the first water contact shall be retained on the display until the cable is dry and the module is updated.
- e. The alarm module shall be capable of detecting the presence of a 1 inch leak anywhere along the cable with a repeatability of +/- 1%.
- f. The alarm module shall continuously monitor the sensing cables and interconnecting cables for continuity. Any break in the cable shall generate an audible alarm, activate an output relay and activate a "continuity" LED on the face of the module.

- g. The alarm module shall have LED's indicating "power" (green), "alarm" (red) and "continuity" (yellow). The module shall be equipped with exposed test, reset and silence buttons. All other functions shall require key access.
  - h. The alarm module shall be powered by Emergency power.
  - i. The module enclosure shall be a minimum of 16 gauge steel, flush mounting type.
- 2. Single point leak detector
  - a. The alarm module, TTC, shall monitor up to a maximum of 50 feet of sensing cable. The alarm module shall indicate that water has contacted the sensing cable by sounding an audible alarm and actuating an output relay. The relay shall be remain activated until the cable is dry and the module is reset.
  - b. The alarm module shall be capable of detecting the presence of a 1 inch leak anywhere along the cable with a repeatability of +/- 1%.
  - c. The alarm module shall continuously monitor the sensing cables and interconnecting cables for continuity. Any break in the cable shall generate an audible alarm, activate an output relay and activate a "continuity" LED on the face of the module.
  - d. The alarm module shall have LED's indicating "power" (green), "alarm" (red) and "continuity" (yellow).
  - e. The alarm module shall be powered by Emergency power.
  - f. The module shall be mounted in a field equipment cabinet.
- 3. Water sensing cable
  - a. The water sensing cable (TT-1000) shall detect the presence of water and pinpoint its location. The cable shall consist of four wires: Two sensor wires, a continuity wire and a return wire. All four wires shall be coated and insulated with a fluoropolymer and wound helically around a fluoropolymer core. The cable shall have a breaking strength, including connectors, of at least 70 pounds, per ASTM D-638. The cable shall have an abrasion resistance of <65 cycles, per UL 719.

- b. The sensing cable shall offer distributed sensing with the ability to detect the location of water at any point along the length of the cable. The cable shall be flexible, and carry less than 24VDC under normal conditions.
  - c. The system shall not alarm when in contact with any metallic equipment such as drip pans, floor tile supports, conduit, etc.
  - d. The cable shall be available in modular, pre-connectorized lengths of 5, 10, 15, 25 and 50 feet. Field splicing shall not be acceptable.
  - e. The cable shall be UL 910 rated and plenum rated per NEC 725-2(b).
  - f. Provide two sets of test instrumentation to owner.
- 4. Jumper cable
  - a. Jumper cable shall be used where leak detection cable is not required but continuity is required (in raceways between alarm module and floor surface, etc.). The jumper cable shall be plenum rated and jacketed with fluoropolymer materials, per NEC 725-2(b). The jumper cable shall consist of four different colors (Y, B, R, G), insulated 18 AWG wires and shall be available in pre-connectorized lengths of 5, 10, 15, 25 and 50 feet.
- 5. Accessories
  - a. Provide all end connectors, leader cables, hold down clips, caution tags, spray adhesive (3M 90M) as required.
- 6. Graphic display map
  - a. Provide a graphic display map for each room served. The map shall be a 1/8 in = 1.0 ft scaled drawing of the area served, indicating actual equipment locations, floor tile and other points of reference. The actual cable routing shall be clearly marked on the map with actual scaled distances every 10 feet.
  - b. A dynamic graphic display, equivalent to the aforementioned map, shall be duplicated on the BMS operator workstation. The area in alarm (within 5 feet) shall blink in red until the alarm is cleared.
- 7. Performance

- a. A maximum wetted area of 2 inches of cable, at any point along the entire length of cable, shall activate an alarm.
- b. The system shall be continuously monitored for continuity. The loss of continuity shall cause an alarm within 5 seconds.
- c. The cable shall be capable of being cleaned with a clean dry cloth, in place.
- d. The cable shall dry and reset the module immediately upon removal from free water. No shaking, wiping or mechanical action shall be required.

8. Installation

- a. All system components shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The manufacturer shall provide necessary installer training and supervision as required.
- b. The cable shall be installed on clean, dry finished surfaces only (coordinate access and schedule installation as required) after the possibility of physical damage has been eliminated. The cable shall be fastened to the surface it is monitoring every 4 feet with hold down clips and spray mastic adhesive. Hold down clip installation shall be subject to spot checks during commissioning. If any clip fails, all other clips shall be re-attached and retested, at no additional cost.
- c. The system shall be commissioned prior to acceptance. Submit a test procedure for approval.

9. Warranty

- a. All equipment shall be warranted to the same extent as the BMS system, or per the manufacturer's warranty, whichever is greater.

Q. Vortex shedding flow meters

- 1. Provide vortex shedding flow meter for steam metering locations. Meter shall be pressure and temperature compensated, rated for service conditions and be manufactured by Endress and Hauser model FTV 1810 or approved equal. Provide remote readout of pressure, flow, MLb/Hr and total MLb.
- 2. Coordinate location to provide proper straight run of pipe, pipe size, etc.



3. Power 24VDC power supply as required from Emergency source.
4. BMS system shall monitor Mlb/Hr, Mlb total, pressure and temperature values.

R. Indoor air quality (Co2/VOC) sensors

1. Provide indoor air quality sensors to monitor Carbon Dioxide (CO2) and Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) levels.
2. The sensors shall be of microprocessor-based photo-acoustic type with heated stannic dioxide semiconductor.
3. The CO2 sensors shall have no more than 1% drift during the first year of operation and minimal drift thereafter so that no calibration will be required.
4. The units shall be wall or duct mounted type as indicated on plans and in the sequence of operation.
5. Wall mounted sensors shall be provided with white plastic cover, without LED indicators.
6. Duct mounted sensors shall be provided with LED indicators in a dust proof plastic housing with transparent cover.
7. The VOC sensor shall have automatic self-calibrating capability to ensure accuracy.
8. The sensor shall meet the following requirements:
  - a. Operating voltage: 24 VAC +/- 20%
  - b. Frequency: 50/60 Hz
  - c. Power consumption: max. 6 VA
  - d. CO2 measuring range: 0 – 2000 ppm
  - e. Tolerance: +/- 100 ppm
  - f. Output: 0 – 10 VAC
  - g. Calibration: none required
  - h. VOC measurement range: 0 – 10 V VOC
  - i. Permissible air velocity in duct: <26.2 Ft/s.
9. The sensors shall be model:
  - a. Siemens QPA63 Series.
  - b. MSA AirOX

## S. Relays

1. Control relays shall be UL listed plug-in type with dust cover and LED “energized” indicator. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application.
2. Time delay relays shall be UL listed solid-state plug-in type with adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable  $\pm 200\%$  (minimum) from set point shown on plans. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure when not installed in local control panel.

## T. Override timers

1. Override timers shall be spring-wound line voltage, UL Listed, with contact rating and configuration as required by application. Provide 0-to-6-hour calibrated dial unless otherwise specified. Timer shall be suitable for flush mounting on control panel face and located on local control panels or where shown.
2. Current transmitters.
3. AC current transmitters shall be the self-powered, combination split-core current transformer type with built-in rectifier and high-gain servo amplifier with 4 to 20 mA two-wire output. Unit ranges shall be 10 A, 20 A, 50 A, 100 A, 150 A, and 200 A full scale, with internal zero and span adjustment and  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale accuracy at 500 ohm maximum burden.
4. Transmitter shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA Recognized.
5. Unit shall be split-core type for clamp-on installation on existing wiring.

## U. Current transformers

1. AC current transformers shall be UL/CSA Recognized and completely encased (except for terminals) in approved plastic material.
2. Transformers shall be available in various current ratios and shall be selected for  $\pm 1\%$  accuracy at 5 A full-scale output.
3. Transformers shall be fixed-core or split-core type for installation on new or existing wiring, respectively.

## V. Voltage transmitters

1. AC voltage transmitters shall be self-powered single-loop (two-wire) type, 4 to 20 mA output with zero and span adjustment.
2. 2 Ranges shall include 100 to 130 VAC, 200 to 250 VAC, 250 to 330 VAC, and 400 to 600 VAC full-scale, adjustable, with  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale accuracy with 500 ohm maximum burden.
3. Transmitters shall be UL/CSA Recognized at 600 VAC rating and meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements.

W. Voltage transformers

1. AC voltage transformers shall be UL/CSA Recognized, 600 VAC rated, complete with built-in fuse protection.
2. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of 4°C to 55°C (40°F to 130°F) and shall provide  $\pm 0.5\%$  accuracy at 24 VAC and a 5 VA load.
3. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic material.

X. Power monitors

1. Power monitors shall be the three-phase type furnished with three-phase disconnect/shorting switch assembly, UL Listed voltage transformers, and UL Listed split-core current transformers.
2. They shall provide a selectable rate pulse output for kWh reading and a 4 to 20 mA output for kW reading. They shall operate with 5 A current inputs with a maximum error of  $\pm 2\%$  at 1.0 power factor or  $\pm 2.5\%$  at 0.5 power factor.

Y. Current switches

1. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current. The switches shall be selected to match the current of the application and output requirements of the DDC system.

Z. Pressure-electric (pe) switches

1. Shall be metal or neoprene diaphragm actuated, operating pressure rated 0-175 kPa (0-25 psig), with calibrated scale set point range of 14-125 kPa (2-18 psig) minimum, UL listed.

2. Provide one or two-stage switch action SPDT, DPST, or DPDT, as required by application. Electrically rated for pilot duty service (125 VA minimum) and/or for motor control.
3. Shall be open type (panel-mounted) or enclosed type for remote installation. Enclosed type shall be NEMA 1 unless otherwise specified.
4. Shall have a permanent indicating gauge on each pneumatic signal line to PE switches.

AA. Local control panels

1. All indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with (hinged door) key-lock latch and removable sub panels. A single key shall be common to all field panels and sub panels.
2. Interconnections between internal and face mounted devices shall be prewired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/ interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
3. Provide ON/OFF power switch with overcurrent protection for control power sources to each local panel.

BB. Local user display

1. Where specified in the sequence of operation or points list, the controllers on the peer to peer building level network shall have a display and keypad for local interface. A keypad shall be provided for interrogating and commanding points in the controller.
2. The display shall use the same security password and access rights for points in the display as is used in the associated controller.
3. The LCD display shall be a minimum of a 2 line 40 character display.
4. The LCD display shall include the full point name, value (numeric, digital or state text), point priority and alarm status on one screen.
5. The LCD shall dynamically update the value, priority, and alarm status for the point being displayed.
6. The display shall be mounted either on the door of the enclosure or remote from the controller.

## 2.10 Communication and Control Wiring

### A. General:

1. Provide copper wiring, plenum cable, and raceways as specified in the applicable sections of Division 16 unless otherwise noted herein.
2. All insulated wire to be copper conductors, UL labeled for 90°C minimum service.

### B. Wire Sizing and Insulation

1. Wiring shall comply with minimum wire size and insulation based on services listed below:

a.	Service	Minimum Gage/Type Insulation Class	
b.	AC 24V Power	12 Ga Solid	600 Volt
c.	DC 24V Power	10 Ga Solid	600 Volt
d.	Class 1	14 Ga Stranded	600 Volt
e.	Class 2	18 Ga Stranded	300 Volt
f.	Class 3	18 Ga Stranded	300 Volt
2. Provide plenum-rated cable when open cable is permitted in supply or return air plenum where allowed per execution specifications defined in Paragraph 3.07

### C. Power Wiring:

1. 115V power circuit wiring above 100 feet distance shall use minimum 10 gage.
2. 24V control power wiring above 200 feet distance shall use minimum 12 gage.

### D. Control Wiring:

1. Digital Input/Output wiring shall use Class 2 twisted pair, insulated.
2. Analog inputs shall use Class 2 twisted shielded pair, insulated and jacketed and require a grounded shield.
3. Actuators with tri-state control shall use 3 conductor with same characteristics

- E. Communication Wiring
  - 1. Ethernet Cable shall be minimum CAT5
  - 2. Secondary level network shall be 24 gage, TSP, low capacitance cable
- F. Approved Cable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Wiring from the following manufacturers which meet the above criteria shall be acceptable:
    - a. Anixter
    - b. Belden

## 2.11 Fiber Optic Cable System

- A. Fiber Optic cable: Optical cables shall be duplex 900 mm tight-buffer construction designed for intra-building environments. The sheath shall be UL Listed OFNP in accordance with NEC Article 770. The optical fiber shall meet the requirements of FDDI, ANSI X3T9.5 PMD for 62.5/125mm for use in 10/100 MB fiber optic networks.
- B. Connectors: All optical fibers shall be field-terminated with ST type connectors. Connectors shall have hot melt and polish or epoxy and polish type connectors. No Mechanical crimp type permitted.
- C. Outdoor/underground installation of Fiber Optic cable shall be gel coated and rated for outdoor/underground installation
- D. Four strands is the minimum required for each run, two for the link and two as spares.
- E. 1 GB Ethernet networks shall be single mode fiber for lengths over 275m. Single mode Ethernet requires two strands of 9 um cable

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.01 Examination:

- A. Examine the project drawings, specifications and existing conditions at the site for control device and equipment locations. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the architect/engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.

- B. Inspect the site to verify that new equipment may be installed. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- C. Examine the drawings and specifications for other portions of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate—or if any discrepancies occur between the drawings and specifications and the work and the plans of the contractor providing the work under this Section and the work of other trades, Sections and Divisions - report these discrepancies to the engineer and obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the work of this Section with the work of others.

### 3.02 Protection

- A. Protect all work and material from damage during construction, startup and testing.
- B. The contractor providing the work under this Section is responsible for its work and equipment until it has been accepted by the Owner.
- C. Correct all damage caused prior to acceptance by the Owner.

### 3.03 Coordination

- A. Site
  - 1. Project coordination between trades is the responsibility of the Contractor having the direct contract with the Owner for the Project (Refer to Division 0 & Division 1).
  - 2. The contractor providing the work under this Section shall follow the Contractor's Project schedule and coordinate all project related activities through the Contactor except as otherwise agreed.
  - 3. Where the work of this Section will be installed in close proximity to, or will interfere with work of other trades, the Contractor shall facilitate communication among all trades affected and shall coordinate space conditions required to accommodate the work of all trades.
- B. Test and Balance
  - 1. Furnish a single set of all tools necessary to interface to the control system to the TAB agent for test and balance purposes.
  - 2. Provide TAB Agent training in the use of these tools. This training will be planned for a minimum of 4 hours.

3. Provide a qualified BAS technician to accompany TAB Agent and to assist in the test and balance process.
4. The tools used during the test and balance process shall be returned to the contractor providing the work of this Section at the completion of testing and balancing.

C. Life Safety

1. Duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown are supplied under Division 26 of this specification. Interlock smoke detectors to air handlers for shutdown.
2. Fire/smoke dampers and actuators required for fire rated walls are provided under another Section of Division 23. Control of these dampers shall be by Division 26.

D. Coordination with controls specified in other sections or divisions.

1. Other sections and/or divisions of this specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to the control system specified in this section. These controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the contractor providing the work of this Section as follows:
  - a. Provide a complete, fully integrated, fully interfaced and fully functioning BAS system as described in the Contract Documents (Drawings, Specifications, Addendums and all post Bid Modifications) regardless of where in the Contract Documents other controls requiring interface and connection to the BAS are specified.
  - b. Each provider of controls products specified under other Sections and Divisions, regardless of the Section provided under, is responsible for the fully coordinated configuration, programming, startup, and testing of those products to meet the sequences of operation and the requirements of the Contract Documents. Each provider of controls products shall provide the contractor providing the work under this Section with all support, as necessary, through local representatives, factory trained startup and service technicians and controls specialists residing at the factory where the products were manufactured to meet the requirements of subparagraph "1.a" above.



- c. Coordinate and resolve all incompatibility issues that arise between the control products provided under this Section and those provided under other Sections and Divisions of this specification or shown on the Drawings. This coordination and resolution of issues should be performed prior to the submittal of product data and shop drawings.
- d. Provide all communication media (wiring, devices, and equipment) for and between all control products specified in this Section and as specified in other Sections and Divisions of the Project Manual for this Project as specified in Part 2, "Communication" of this specification.

### 3.04 General Workmanship

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e., horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- C. Install all equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by Chapter 1, Article 100, Part A of the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- D. Verify integrity of all wiring to ensure continuity and the absence of all shorts and grounds.
- E. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with acceptable industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility.
- F. All work shall be executed in compliance all adopted codes, statutes and regulations and all standards referenced therein.

### 3.05 Field Quality Control

- A. Provide a Six (6) Sigma certified quality manager on staff to inspect the project execution and to enforce quality standards.
- B. Continually supervise and monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality of workmanship.
- C. Provide all inspections, tests, commissioning and reports specified in this Section and in other Sections and Divisions of the Contract Documents related to the providing of control products and BAS.

## 3.06 Existing Equipment

- A. Wiring: Existing wires not in use may be reused. The integrity of the wire and its proper application to the installation are the responsibility of the contractor providing the work under this Section. The wire shall be properly identified and tested in accordance with this specification. Unless indicated otherwise unused or abandoned control wiring shall be removed and become the property of the contractor, unless specifically noted or shown to be reused. Where it is not practical to remove unused or abandoned wiring, it shall be left in place and shall be clearly identified and labeled as such.
- B. Local Control Panels: Existing local control panels may be reused to locate new equipment. All unused equipment and wiring within these panels shall be removed. Panel face cover shall be patched to fill all holes caused by removal of unused equipment or replaced with new. Existing panels removed become the property of the contractor.
- C. Unless otherwise directed, the contractor is not responsible for the repairs or replacement of existing equipment and systems, valves, dampers, or actuators. Should the contractor find existing equipment that requires maintenance, notify the engineer in writing within 2 work days of discovering the issue or deficiency.
- D. Temperature Sensor Wells: Existing wells in piping for temperature sensors may be reused. These wells shall be modified as required for proper fit of new sensors.
- E. Indicator Gauges: Where these devices remain and are not removed, they shall be made operational and recalibrated to ensure accuracy.
- F. Room Thermostats: Shall be removed and become the property of the contractor, unless otherwise noted.
- G. Electronic Sensors and Transmitters: Unless specifically noted otherwise, become the property of the contractor.
- H. Controllers and Auxiliary Electronic Devices: Become the property of the contractor.
- I. Damper Actuators, Linkages, and Appurtenances: Become the property of the contractor.
- J. Control Valves: Become the property of the contractor.
- K. The mechanical system shall remain in operation between the hours of 6 a.m. and 6 p.m., Monday through Friday. No modifications to the system shall cause the mechanical system to be shut down for more than 15 minutes or to fail to maintain space comfort conditions during those time periods. Perform cutover of

controls that cannot meet the conditions outside of those hours. The building's system may be operated during scheduled hours by time-clock devices or an existing control system. It is important that the systems continue to operate under the programmed schedule while the installation of the new control system is in progress.

- L. The scheduling of fans through existing or temporary time clocks or control system shall be maintained throughout the DDC system installation.
- M. Install control panels where required.
- N. Modify existing starter control circuits, if necessary, to provide hand/off/auto control of each starter controlled. If new starters or starter control packages are required, these shall be included as part of this contract.
- O. Patch holes and finish to match existing materials and colors.

### 3.07 Wiring

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes and Division 26 of this specification. Where the requirements of this section differ from those in Division 26, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. All NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL Listed and installed in conduit according to NEC and Division 26 requirements.
- C. All low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements and installed in conduit according to NEC and Division 26 requirements. (Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.)
- D. Do not install Class 2 wiring in conduit containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g., relays and transformers).
- E. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or wire nut. All wire-to-wire connections shall be at a terminal strip or wire nut.
- F. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- G. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 V. If only higher voltages are available, provide step-down transformers or interposing relays.

- H. All wiring in conduit shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points or junction boxes.
- I. Maintain fire rating at all penetrations.
- J. Size and type of conduit and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor providing the work under this Section, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, NEC requirements and Division 26 requirements.
- K. Include one pull string in each conduit 3/4 in. or larger.
- L. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures can include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- M. Conceal all conduit, except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install conduit to maintain a minimum clearance of 6 in. from high-temperature equipment (e.g., hot pipes or flues).
- N. Secure conduit with conduit clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Conduit and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Conduits may not be run on or attached to ductwork.
- O. Terminate all control and/or interlock wiring and maintain updated (as-built) wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- P. Flexible metal conduits and liquid-tight, flexible metal conduits shall not exceed 3 ft in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal conduit less than 1/2 in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal conduits shall be used.
- Q. Conduit shall be adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Conduit sections shall be joined with couplings. Terminations shall be made with fittings at boxes, and ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

### 3.08 Communication Wiring

- A. All cabling shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for all communication cabling.
- B. Do not install communication wiring in raceway and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.

- C. Maximum pulling, tension, and bend radius for cable installation, as specified by the cable manufacturer, shall not be exceeded during installation.
- D. Verify the integrity of the entire network following the cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- E. When a cable enters or exits a building, a lightning arrestor shall be installed between the lines and ground. The lightning arrestor shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- F. All runs of communication wiring shall be unspliced length when that length is commercially available.
- G. All communication wiring shall be labeled to indicate origination and destination data.
- H. Grounding of coaxial cable shall be in accordance with NEC regulations article on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."

### 3.09 Fiber Optic Cable System

- A. Maximum pulling tensions as specified by the cable manufacturer shall not be exceeded during installation. Post-installation residual cable tension shall be within cable manufacturer's specifications.
  - B. All cabling and associated components shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' instructions. Minimum cable and unjacketed fiber bend radii, as specified by cable manufacturer, shall be maintained.
  - C. All terminations need to be made into a patch panel, designed for such use. Free air terminations with patch panels are prohibited.
- A. Conduit, Raceways and Piping Support
- 1. Raceways, conduit and piping shall be supported every 6feet for horizontal runs and every 8feet for vertical runs.
  - 2. Conduit, raceways and piping above suspended ceilings shall be supported from or anchored to structural members and shall not be supported by or anchored to other electrical raceways, ceiling support systems or mechanical systems.

### 3.10 Installation Of Sensors

- A. General:

1. Install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment within which the sensor operates.
3. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by the wall framing.
4. All wires attached to sensors shall be air sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas affecting sensor readings.
5. Sensors used in mixing plenums and hot and cold decks shall be of the averaging type.
6. Low-limit sensors used in mixing plenums shall be installed in a serpentine manner horizontally across the full face of the coil.
7. All pipe-mounted temperature sensors shall be installed in wells. Install all liquid temperature sensors with heat-conducting fluid in thermal wells.
8. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on north wall, complete with sun shield at designated location.

B. Room Instrument Mounting

1. Room instruments, including but not limited to wall mounted thermostats and sensors located in occupied spaces shall be mounted 48 inches above the finished floor unless otherwise shown.

C. Instrumentation Installed in Piping Systems

1. Thermometers and temperature sensing elements installed in liquid systems shall be installed in thermowells.
2. Gauges in piping systems subject to pulsation shall have snubbers.
3. Gauges for steam service shall have pigtail fittings with isolation valve.

D. Duct Smoke Detectors

1. Duct smoke detectors shall be provided by the contractor responsible for providing the Fire Alarm System. The contractor responsible for providing the sheet metal ductwork shall install the duct smoke detectors in supply and return air ducts.

2. Connect the DDC System to the auxiliary contacts provided on the Smoke Detector as required for system safeties and to provide alarms to the DDC system.

E. Occupancy Sensors

1. A sufficient quantity of occupancy sensors shall be provided to provide complete coverage of the area (room or space).
2. Occupancy sensors shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70 requirements and the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Occupancy sensors shall not be located within 1.8 m (6 feet) of HVAC outlets or heating ducts.
4. PIR and dual-technology PIR/ultrasonic sensors shall not be installed where they can "see" beyond any doorway.
5. Ultrasonic sensors shall not be installed in spaces containing ceiling fans.
6. Sensors shall detect motion to within 0.6 m (2 feet) of all room entrances and shall not trigger due to motion outside the room.
7. The off-delay timer shall be set to 15 minutes unless otherwise shown.
8. All sensor adjustments shall be made prior to beneficial occupancy, but after installation of furniture systems, shelving, partitions, etc.
9. Each controlled area shall have one hundred percent coverage capable of detecting small hand-motion movements, accommodating all occupancy habits of single or multiple occupants at any location within the controlled room.

F. Temperature Limit Switch

1. A temperature limit switch (Low Temperature Detector) shall be provided to sense the temperature.
2. A sufficient number of temperature limit switches shall be installed to provide complete coverage of the duct section.
3. Manual reset limit switches shall be installed in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily.

4. The temperature limit switch sensing element shall be installed in a serpentine pattern and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
5. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip. Provide 3 m of sensing element for each 1 m<sup>2</sup> (1 ft of sensing element for each 1 ft<sup>2</sup>) of coil area.

G. Averaging Temperature Sensing Elements

1. Sensing elements shall be installed in a serpentine pattern.
2. Averaging sensors shall be installed in a serpentine manner vertically across the duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip.

H. Air Flow Measuring Stations (AFMS)

1. Outside Air AFMSs shall be located downstream from the Outside Air filters.
2. Pitot Tube type AFMS shall not be used if the expected velocity measurement is below 3.5 m/s (700 fpm) [or for outside airflow measurements].

I. Differential air static pressure.

1. Supply Duct Static Pressure: Pipe the high-pressure tap to the duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the high-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor (if applicable) or to the location of the duct high-pressure tap and leave open to the plenum.
2. Return Duct Static Pressure: Pipe the high-pressure tap to the duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the low-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor.
3. Building Static Pressure: Pipe the low-pressure port of the pressure sensor to the static pressure port located on the outside of the building through a high-volume accumulator. Pipe the high-pressure port to a location behind a thermostat cover.
4. The piping to the pressure ports on all pressure transducers shall contain a capped test port located adjacent to the transducer.
5. All pressure transducers, other than those controlling VAV boxes, shall be located in field device panels, not on the equipment monitored or on ductwork.



6. Mount transducers in a location accessible for service without use of ladders or special equipment.
- J. Water Differential pressure sensors
1. Differential pressure sensors shall be installed with valved taps into the piping to ensure serviceability without draining the system
  2. Sensors shall be mounted with bleed valves
  3. After sensor installation any air shall be eliminated using the bleed valves to ensure reading accuracy
  4. The sensors shall be located to ensure accessibility
- K. Relative Humidity Sensors
1. Relative humidity sensors in supply air ducts shall be installed at least 3m (10 feet) downstream of humidity injection elements.
- L. Flowmeters
1. The minimum straight unobstructed piping for the flowmeter installation shall be at least 10 pipe diameters upstream and at least 5 pipe diameters downstream and/or in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- M. Flow Switch
1. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
  2. Adjust flow switch in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.11 Wireless Transceiver Installation:

- A. Mount transceivers in a grid like pattern not exceeding more than 25 - 100 feet line of sight between devices. Location of each transceiver shall be optimally chosen to get the best line of sight between it and at least two of its neighbors.  
**[ID: 140]**
- B. Transceivers may be mounted in the plenum space. Transceivers mounted in a metal enclosure shall utilize a remote mount antenna attached outside the metal enclosure to maintain adequate signal strength.

- C. All transceiver antennas shall be oriented in the vertical plane for proper RF communication.
- D. Once installed ensure good communication is taking place between each device and at least two of its neighbors. Install extra transceivers if necessary to act as routers/repeaters for isolated devices with poor communication to the network.
- E. Provide a test report to the Owner demonstrating that the communication between all devices on the wireless network is functioning at the proper speeds, security and quality of signal.

### 3.12 Flow Switch Installation

- A. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
- B. Adjust flow switch in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.13 Actuators

- A. Mount and link control damper actuators according to manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. To compress seals when spring-return actuators are used on normally closed dampers, power actuator to approximately 5° open position, manually close the damper, and then tighten the linkage.
  - 2. Check operation of damper/actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed positions.
  - 3. Provide all mounting hardware and linkages for actuator installation.
- B. Electric/Electronic
  - 1. Dampers: Actuators shall be direct-mounted on damper shaft or jackshaft unless shown as a linkage installation. For low-leakage dampers with seals, the actuator shall be mounted with a minimum 5° available for tightening the damper seals. Actuators shall be mounted following manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 2. Valves: Actuators shall be connected to valves with adapters approved by the actuator manufacturer. Actuators and adapters shall be mounted following the actuator manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.14 Warning labels and identification tags

- A. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all equipment that can be automatically started by the DDC system.
  - 1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
  - 2. Warning labels shall read as follows: “C A U T I O N This equipment is operating under automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch disconnect to “Off” position before servicing.”
- B. Permanent warning labels shall be affixed to all motor starters and all control panels that are connected to multiple power sources utilizing separate disconnects.
  - 1. Labels shall use white lettering (12-point type or larger) on a red background.
  - 2. Warning labels shall read as follows: “C A U T I O N This equipment is fed from more than one power source with separate disconnects. Disconnect all power sources before servicing.”
- C. Equipment and Device labeling:
  - 1. Labels and tags shall be keyed to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings.
  - 2. All Enclosures and DDC Hardware shall be labeled.
  - 3. All sensors and actuators not in occupied areas shall be tagged.
  - 4. Airflow measurement arrays shall be tagged to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMS flow coefficient.
  - 5. Duct static pressure taps shall be tagged at the location of the pressure tap.
  - 6. Tags shall be plastic or metal and shall be mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.
  - 7. Labels exterior to protective enclosures shall be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware.
  - 8. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but shall not be hand written.
  - 9. Identify all other control components with permanent labels. All plug-in components shall be labeled such that removal of the component does not remove the label.

10. Identify room sensors relating to terminal box or valves with nameplates.
11. Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels are to be visible and legible after equipment is installed.

D. Identification of Tubing and Wiring

1. All wiring and cabling including that within factory-fabricated panels shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with the DDC address or termination number.
2. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
3. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with a descriptive identifier.

3.15 Identification Of Hardware And Wiring

- A. All wiring and cabling, including that within factory-fabricated panels shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with the DDC address or termination number.
- B. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 5 cm (2 in.) of termination with a descriptive identifier.
- C. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
- D. Identify control panels with minimum 1 cm (½ in.) letters on laminated plastic nameplates.
- E. Identify all other control components with permanent labels. All plug-in components shall be labeled such that removal of the component does not remove the label.
- F. Identify room sensors relating to terminal box or valves with nameplates.
- G. Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels are to be visible and legible after equipment is installed.
- H. Identifiers shall match record documents.

3.16 Programming

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging. There shall be a minimum of 25% of available memory free within the primary controller for future use.
- B. Point Naming: System point names shall be modular in design, allowing easy operator interface without the use of a written point index. Point Naming standard shall be agreed upon between owner and the contractor providing work under this Section. Refer to Submittals section in the General Section.
- C. Software Programming
  - 1. Provide programming for the system and adhere to the sequences of operation provided. Provide all other system programming necessary for the operation of the system, but not specified in this document. Imbed into the control program sufficient comment statements to clearly describe each section of the program. The comment statements shall reflect the language used in the sequences of operation and be of different font and color in text editor. Use the appropriate technique based on one of the following programming types:
    - a. Text-based:
      - 1) Shall provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Shall be modular and structured
      - 3) Shall be commented
      - 4) Shall provide line by line programming and compilation wizard to allow for ease of editing.
    - b. Graphic-based:
      - 1) Shall provide actions for all possible situations
      - 2) Shall provide programming and compilation wizard to allow for ease of editing.
      - 3) Shall be documented
- D. Operator Interface
  - 1. Standard graphics—Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, chiller, boiler, air handler, and all terminal equipment. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system. Also show relevant calculated points such as set points.
  - 2. Show terminal equipment information on a “graphic” summary table. Provide dynamic information for each point shown.

3. Provide all the labor necessary to install, initialize, start up, and troubleshoot all operator interface software and its functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, the operator interface database, and any third-party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface.
4. Provide necessary programming to create all reports referred to in Part 2 Operator Interface Software

### 3.17 Control system checkout and testing

- A. Perform a three-phase commissioning procedure consisting of field I/O calibration and commissioning, system commissioning and integrated system program commissioning. Document all commissioning information on commissioning data sheets that shall be submitted prior to acceptance testing. Commissioning work that requires shutdown of system or deviation from normal function shall be performed when the operation of the system is not required. The commissioning shall be coordinated with the owner and construction manager to ensure systems are available when needed. Notify the operating personal in writing of the testing schedule so that authorized personnel from the owner and construction manager are present throughout the commissioning procedure.
- B. Phase I – Field I/O Calibration and Commissioning
  1. Verify that each control panel has been installed according to plans, specifications and approved shop drawings. Calibrate, test, and have signed off each control sensor and device. Commissioning to include, but not be limited to:
    - a. Sensor accuracy at 10, 50 and 90% of range.
    - b. Sensor range.
    - c. Verify analog limit and binary alarm reporting.
    - d. Point value reporting.
    - e. Binary alarm and switch settings.
    - f. Actuator and positioner spring ranges if pneumatic actuation is utilized.
    - g. Fail safe operation on loss of control signal, pneumatic air, electric power, network communications, etc.
- C. Phase II – System Commissioning
  1. Each BMS program shall be put on line and commissioned. Demonstrate each programmed sequence of operation in the presence of the owner and construction manager and compare the results in writing to the specified sequences of operation. In addition, each control loop shall be tested to

verify proper response and stable control, within specified accuracy. System program test results shall be recorded on commissioning data sheets and submitted for record. Any discrepancies between the specification and the actual performance will be immediately rectified and re-tested.

D. Phase III - Integrated System Program Commissioning

1. Tests shall include, but not be limited to:
  - a. Data communication, both normal and failure modes.
  - b. Fully loaded system response time.
  - c. Impact of component failures on system performance and system operation.
  - d. Time/Date changes.
  - e. End of month/ end of year operation.
  - f. Season changeover.
  - g. Global application programs and point sharing.
  - h. System backup and reloading.
  - i. System status displays.
  - j. Diagnostic functions.
  - k. Power failure routines.
  - l. Battery backup.
  - m. Smoke Control, vents, in concert with Fire Alarm System testing.
  - n. Testing of all electrical and HVAC systems with other division of work.
  - o. Year 2000 compliance test.
2. Sub Systems shall also be tested and commissioned.
3. Submit for approval, a detailed acceptance test procedure designed to demonstrate compliance with contractual requirements. This Acceptance test procedure will take place after the commissioning procedure but before final acceptance, to verify that sensors and control devices maintain specified accuracy and the system performance does not degrade over time.
4. Using the commissioning test data sheets, demonstrate each point. Also demonstrate 100 percent of the system functions. Demonstrate all points and system functions until all devices and functions meet specification.
5. Provide all instruments for testing. Instruments required by the Owner for routine maintenance shall be turned over to the Owner after acceptance testing.

6. All test instruments shall be submitted for approval prior to their use in commissioning. Each instrument used shall have been calibrated within 12 months of the date of the test by a certified calibration service.
  - a. Test Instrument Accuracy:
    - 1) Temperature: 1/4F or 1/2% full scale, whichever is less.
    - 2) Pressure: High Pressure (PSI): 1/2 PSI or 1/2% full scale, whichever is less.
    - 3) Low Pressure: 1/2% of full scale (in w.c.)
    - 4) Humidity: 2% RH
    - 5) Electrical: 1/4% full scale
7. After the above tests are complete and the system is demonstrated to be functioning as specified, a thirty-day performance test period shall begin. If the system performs as specified throughout the test period, requiring only routine maintenance, the system shall be accepted. If the system fails during the test, and cannot be fully corrected within eight hours, the owner may request that commissioning and performance tests be repeated.

E. Move In Checkout

1. Each floor shall be retested 24 hours prior to Owner move in. The test shall ensure all corrective work is complete and all systems are complete and functioning at 100%.

F. Additional testing, debugging and fine tuning

1. Provide an additional 100 hours of BMS project manager, a controls technician or systems programmer, as required, to be used at the owner's discretion to test, debug and fine tune the system during standard business hours after Owner acceptance of the system within the first 12 months of operation.

### 3.18 Control system demonstration and acceptance

A. Demonstration

1. Prior to acceptance, the control system shall undergo a series of performance tests to verify operation and compliance with this specification. These tests shall occur after the contractor providing the work under this Section has completed the installation, started up the system, and performed its own in-house QA/QC testing.



2. The tests described in this section are to be performed in addition to the tests that the contractor providing the work under this Section performs as a necessary part of the installation, start-up, and debugging process and as specified in the "Control System Checkout and Testing" article in Part 3 of this specification. The engineer will be present to observe and review these tests. The engineer shall be notified at least 10 days in advance of the start of the testing procedures.
3. The demonstration process shall follow the process approved in Part 1, "Submittals." The approved checklists and forms shall be completed for all systems as part of the demonstration.
4. Provide at least two persons equipped with two-way communication and shall demonstrate actual field operation of each control and sensing point for all modes of operation including day, night, occupied, unoccupied, fire/smoke alarm, seasonal changeover, and power failure modes. The purpose is to demonstrate the calibration, response, and action of every point and system. Any test equipment required to prove the proper operation shall be provided by and operated by the contractor providing the work under this Section.
5. As each control input and output is checked, a log shall be completed showing the date, technician's initials, and any corrective action taken or needed.
6. Demonstrate compliance with Part 1, "System Performance."
7. Demonstrate compliance with sequences of operation through all modes of operation.
8. Demonstrate complete operation of operator interface, graphics and points refresh cycles.
9. Additionally, the following items shall be demonstrated:
  - a. DDC control loop response. Supply trend data output in a graphical form showing the step response of each DDC control loop. The test shall show the loop's response to a change in set point, which represents a change of actuator position of at least 25% of its full range. The sampling rate of the trend shall be from 10 seconds to 3 minutes, depending on the speed of the loop. The trend data shall show for each sample the set point, actuator position, and controlled variable values. Any loop that yields unreasonably under-damped or over-damped control shall be further tuned or replaced.

- b. Demand limiting. Supply a trend data output showing the action of the demand-limiting algorithm. The data shall document the action on a minute-by-minute basis over at least a 30-minute period. Included in the trend shall be building kW, demand limiting set point, and the status of shedable equipment outputs.
  - c. Optimum start/stop. Supply a trend data output showing the capability of the algorithm. The change-of value or change-of-state trends shall include the output status of all optimally started and stopped equipment, as well as temperature sensor inputs of affected areas.
  - d. Economizer Operation
  - e. CO2 and Demand Control Ventilation
  - f. Supply Air Temperature Reset
  - g. Supply Duct Static Pressure Reset
  - h. Interface to the building fire alarm system.
  - i. Operational logs for each system that indicate all set points, operating points, valve positions, mode, and equipment status shall be submitted to the architect/engineer. These logs shall cover three 48-hour periods and have a sample frequency of not more than 10 minutes. The logs shall be provided in both printed and electronic formats.
10. Any tests that fail to demonstrate the operation of the system shall be repeated at a later date. Prove any necessary repairs or revisions to the hardware or software to successfully complete all tests at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Acceptance

- 1. All tests described in this specification shall have been performed to the satisfaction of both the engineer and owner prior to the acceptance of the control system as meeting the requirements of completion. Any tests that cannot be performed due to circumstances beyond the control of the contractor providing the work under this Section may be exempt from the completion requirements if stated as such in writing by the engineer. Such tests shall then be performed as part of the warranty.

2. The system shall not be accepted until all forms and checklists completed as part of the demonstration are submitted and approved as required in Part 1, "Submittals."

### 3.19 Cleaning

- A. Clean up all debris resulting from their activities daily. Remove all cartons, containers, crates, etc., under his/her control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.
- B. At the completion of work in any area, clean all work, equipment, etc., keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris, etc.
- C. At the completion of work, all equipment furnished under this section shall be checked for paint damage, and any factory-finished paint that has been damaged shall be repaired to match the adjacent areas. Any cabinet or enclosure that has been deformed shall be replaced with new material and repainted to match the adjacent areas.

### 3.20 Training

- A. Provide competent instructors to give full instruction to designated personnel in the adjustment, operation and maintenance of the system installed. Factory employed/certified instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. All training shall be held during normal work hours of 8:00 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. weekdays.
- B. Provide a minimum of five (5) on-site, on-line, or classroom training sessions throughout the contract period for personnel designated by the owner. Each session shall be a minimum of eight (8) hours each.
- C. Provide two additional training sessions at 6 and 12 months following building's turnover. Each session shall be three days (8 hours each day) in length and shall be coordinated with the Owner.
- D. Provide 80 (Eighty) hours of site specific training for Owner's operating personnel. Training shall include:
  1. Day-to-day Operators:
    - a. Proficiently operate the system
    - b. Understand control system architecture and configuration
    - c. Understand DDC system components

- d. Understand system operation, including DDC system control and optimizing routines (algorithms)
  - e. Operate the workstation and peripherals
  - f. Log on and off the system
  - g. Access graphics, point reports, and logs
  - h. Adjust and change system set points, time schedules, and holiday schedules
  - i. Recognize malfunctions of the system by observation of the printed copy and graphical visual signals
  - j. Understand system drawings and Operation and Maintenance manual
  - k. Understand the job layout and location of control components
  - l. Access data from DDC controllers and ASCs
  - m. Operate portable operator's terminals
2. Advanced Operators:
- a. Make and change graphics on the workstation
  - b. Create, delete, and modify alarms, including annunciation and routing of these
  - c. Create, delete, and modify point trend logs and graph or print these both on an ad-hoc basis and at user-definable time intervals
  - d. Create, delete, and modify reports
  - e. Add, remove, and modify system's physical points
  - f. Create, modify, and delete programming
  - g. Add panels when required
  - h. Add operator interface stations
  - i. Create, delete, and modify system displays, both graphical and others

- j. Perform DDC system field checkout procedures
  - k. Perform DDC controller unit operation and maintenance procedures
  - l. Perform workstation and peripheral operation and maintenance procedures
  - m. Perform DDC system diagnostic procedures
  - n. Configure hardware including PC boards, switches, communication, and I/O points
  - o. Maintain, calibrate, troubleshoot, diagnose, and repair hardware
  - p. Adjust, calibrate, and replace system components
3. System Managers/Administrators:
- a. Maintain software and prepare backups
  - b. Interface with job-specific, third-party operator software
  - c. Add new users and understand password security procedures
- E. In addition to the site specific training on the system installed, as outlined above, provide enrollment for two (2) building operators in a four (4) day course at the manufacturer's factory training center. All course tuition, course material fees and transportation to and from the training center are to be included in the proposal. Expenses for lodging and meals will be provided by others.
- F. Provide 8 hours of additional training quarterly during warranty period.
- G. The Owner may require personnel to have more comprehensive understanding of the hardware and software, additional training shall be available from the Contractor providing the work under this Section. If such training is required by the Owner, it will be contracted at a later date. Provide description in the Technical Proposal of available local and factory customer training.
- H. Provide course outline and materials in accordance with the "Submittals" article in Part 1 of this specification. The instructor(s) shall provide one hard copy of training material per student as well as one electronic copy of all training materials to the Owner.

- I. The instructor(s) shall be factory-trained instructors experienced in presenting this material.
- 3.21 Sequences of operation
- A. Sequences of Operation are shown on the Drawings.

\*\*\*\*\*END OF SECTION\*\*\*\*\*

## SECTION 231126 - FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- D. LPG: Liquefied-petroleum gas.

## 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. For Piping Containing Only Vapor:
    - a. Piping and Valves: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For Piping Containing Liquid:
    - a. Piping between Shutoff Valves: 350 psig unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Piping Other Than Above: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Valves and Fittings: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.

- B. LPG System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 2 psig but not more than 5 psig and is reduced to secondary pressure of more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
  - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 5. Dielectric fittings.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For LPG equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing LPG piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.



- C. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging coating and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing LPG Service: Do not interrupt LPG service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of LPG supply according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of LPG service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of LPG service without Owner's written permission.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedules 40 and 80, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground, and stainless steel underground.

5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
  6. Mechanical Couplings:
    - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
    - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
    - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
    - d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
    - e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
1. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
  2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
  3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
  5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
  6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
- C. PE Pipe: ASTM D2513, SDR 11.
1. PE Fittings: ASTM D2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
  2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
    - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet.
    - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
    - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
    - d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
    - e. Tracer wire connection.
    - f. Ultraviolet shield.

- g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
- 4. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
  - a. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
  - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - c. Acetal collets.
  - d. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
- 5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
  - b. PE body tube.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Acetal collets.
  - e. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
- 6. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
  - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - c. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
  - d. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Flexible Piping Joints:

- 1. Approved for LPG service.
- 2. Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
- 3. Minimum working pressure of 250 psig and 250 deg F operating temperature.
- 4. Flanged- or threaded-end connections to match equipment connected and shall be capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment.
- 5. Maximum 36-inch length for liquid LPG lines.

### B. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

- 1. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
- 2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
- 3. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
- 4. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
- 5. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 6. Maximum Length: 72 inches

### C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.

4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

- D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for LPG.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with ASME B16.33 and UL 842.
1. CWP Rating: 250 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Socket ends for brazed joints.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing by CSA or agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Valves 1-1/4 inch and larger shall be suitable for LPG service, with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Vapor Service: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inch to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
  7. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
  8. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  9. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  10. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.

11. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  12. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  13. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  14. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  15. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
  2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze
  3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
  5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  9. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
  2. Plug: Bronze.
  3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  7. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Valve Boxes:
1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
  2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
  3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
  4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
  5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head and with stem of length required to operate valve.

## 2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for LPG.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller.

- B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
  - 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
  - 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  - 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  - 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
  - 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
  - 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  - 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
  - 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
  - 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
  - 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
  - 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.
- C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
  - 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
  - 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  - 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  - 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  - 5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  - 6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
  - 7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig

## 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## 2.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for LPG piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

## 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off LPG to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect LPG piping according to NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that LPG utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

## 3.4 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Install underground, LPG piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade.
  - 1. If LPG piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, LPG piping according to ASTM D2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Joints for connection to inlets and outlets on vaporizers, air mixers, regulators, and valves may be flanged or threaded to match the equipment.

### 3.5 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install LPG piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where readily accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed LPG piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded



joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

1. Above Accessible Ceilings: LPG piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  2. In Floors: Install LPG piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  3. In Floor Channels: Install LPG piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install LPG piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install LPG piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use LPG piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### 3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

### 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for steel piping with maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- B. Install hangers for corrugated stainless-steel tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- D. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

- E. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless-steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install LPG piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- C. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliances and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.11 PAINTING

- A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Test, inspect, and purge LPG according to NFPA 58 and NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. LPG piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.13 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground LPG liquid piping shall be one of the following:
  1. Schedule 40 steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- B. Aboveground LPG liquid piping shall be one of the following:
  1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40 steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings and threaded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- C. Underground LPG vapor piping shall be one of the following:
  1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat-fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
  2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- D. Aboveground LPG vapor piping shall be one of the following:
  1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- E. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

### 3.14 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.15 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.16 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Underground Vapor Piping:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, lubricated plug valves.

### 3.17 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground Liquid Piping:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
- B. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 3. Bronze plug valve.
- C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231126

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

## B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

#### 2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
  - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  - 2. Type: S.
  - 3. Grade: NS.
  - 4. Class: 25.
  - 5. Use: O.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."



## 2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- D. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- E. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- K. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines" for the basic level of cleanliness.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air, Return Air and Exhaust Air Ducts: Seal Class A.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

- B. Building Attachments: Structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum interval of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.7 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel as follows:
- B. Supply Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - 2. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

D. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.

END OF SECTION 233113

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Flange connectors.
6. Pressure relief access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, and combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors.
    - d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 316.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### 2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 2. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  - 3. Flex-Tek Group.
  - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 8. Pottorff.
  - 9. Ruskin Company.

- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 3-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, minimum 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center or end pivoted maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. 90-degree stops.

#### 2.4 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 2. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 4. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 7. Pottorff.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
  - 9. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.

- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- F. Blades:
  - 1. Multiple, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
  - 2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
  - 3. Action: Parallel.
  - 4. Balance: Gravity.
  - 5. End pivoted.
- G. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- H. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- I. Tie Bars and Brackets:
  - 1. Material: Aluminum.
  - 2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.
- J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- K. Bearings: Bronze.
- L. Accessories:
  - 1. Flange on intake.
  - 2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

## 2.5 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
    - b. Greenheck Fan Corporation
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Pottorff.
    - f. Ruskin Company.
    - g. Trox USA Inc.
    - h. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.



- b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
  - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
- 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- 7. Bearings:
  - a. Molded synthetic.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- B. Jackshaft:
  - 1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  - 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- C. Damper Hardware:
  - 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  - 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aire Technologies.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 3. Arrow United Industries.
  - 4. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  - 5. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 8. Pottorff.
  - 9. Prefco.
  - 10. Ruskin Company.
  - 11. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  - 12. Ward Industries, Inc.
- B. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL. Leakage classification I.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: Sleeve thickness must be equal to or thicker than the duct connected to it and what is required per manufacturers UL listing. For installations where breakaway style duct/sleeve connection is not used, the sleeve will have a minimum of 10 gage. Sleeve length shall be long enough to suit the application.
  - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

## 2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Pressure Relief Access Door:
  - 1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Door: Single wall with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
  - 3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
  - 4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg.
  - 5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
  - 6. Hinge: Continuous piano.

7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd.
  2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F .
- G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.

7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

## 2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  1. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
- H. Access Door Sizes:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

- I. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- J. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- K. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- L. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape.
- M. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- N. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

## SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

## 2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product from the following list of acceptable manufacturers:
  - 1. Thermaflex, a Flex-Tek Group company
  - 2. Flexmaster USA, Inc.
  - 3. JP Lamborn Co.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm .
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape.
- F. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- G. Installation:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

## H. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346



## SECTION 237413 – DEDICATED OUTDOOR PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS (DOAS)

## GENERAL

## 1.1 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit unit performance data including capacity, nominal and operating performance.
- B. Submit Mechanical Specifications for unit and accessories describing construction, components and options.
- C. Submit drawings indicating overall dimensions as well as installation, operation and services clearances. Indicate lift points and recommendations and center of gravity. Indicate unit shipping, installation and operating weights including dimensions.
- D. Submit data on electrical requirements and connection points. Include recommended wire and fuse sizes or MCA, sequence of operation, safety and start-up instructions.
- E. Drawings submitted for approval shall be accompanied by a copy of the purchase agreement between the Contractor and an authorized service representative of the manufacturer for check, test and start up and first year service.

## 1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions for rigging, unloading, and transporting units.
- B. Protect units from physical damage. Leave factory shipping covers in place until installation.
- C. Units to be secured via base rail tie-down locations.

## 1.3 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five (5) year parts and labor warranty for entire unit.

## PRODUCTS

## 1.4 SUMMARY

- A. The contractor shall furnish and install packaged outdoor air unit(s) as shown and scheduled on the contract documents. The unit(s) shall be installed in accordance with this specification and perform at the specified conditions as scheduled.

**B. ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide product from the following list of acceptable manufacturers:

- a. Trane – Base Bid
- b. Greenheck – Alternate 1

**C. GENERAL UNIT DESCRIPTION**

1. Unit(s) furnished and installed shall be packaged outdoor air unit(s) as scheduled on contract documents and described in these specifications. Unit(s) shall be designed for dehumidification, cooling and/or heating. For dehumidification and cooling modes, the evaporator temperature shall be monitored, reported at unit controller. Compressor controls shall modulate capacity to maintain evaporator leaving set point. Hot Gas Bypass shall not be used to control compressor capacity. Compressor Hot Gas Reheat (HGRH) shall be factory installed. To prevent rehydration of evaporator condensate the reheat coil face shall be located a minimum of 6” downstream from the leaving face of the evaporator coil. Heating system shall include modulating controls. Compressor on-off only or primary heating on-off only controls shall not be acceptable control strategies.
2. Units shall be designed in accordance with AHRI-920 operating points and shall be capable of providing design supply air conditions (dry bulb and wet bulb) at all part load conditions, down to 55F ambient, and maintain 70F reheat. Demonstration point shall maintain constant 50F dew point at 60F ambient with matching entering air conditions of 60F db / 58F wb while maintaining 70 F reheat without the use of auxiliary heat in the form of gas or electric reheat.
3. Unit(s) shall have labels, decals, and/or tags to aid in the service of the unit and indicate caution areas.

**D. CABINET**

1. Cabinet panels: 2” double-wall foamed panel construction throughout the indoor section of unit to provide nonporous, cleanable interior surfaces. All interior seams exposed to airflow shall be sealed.
2. Insulation: 2” polyisocyanurate foam metal encapsulated with no exposed edges. Initial R value of 6.6 per inch of thickness.
3. Cabinet base shall be double wall construction designed to prevent trapping or ponding of water within the unit base. Cabinet base pan shall be insulated with 2” thick polyisocyanurate foam. Foam insulation shall be fully enclosed with galvanized steel insulation cover. Insulation shall not be applied to underside of unit base.
4. Cabinet Base Rails: Side and end base rails shall include openings for forklift and tie-down access. To protect unit base from fork damage side rails shall include removable heavy gauge fork pockets.
5. Shipping anchors attach to and/or through unit base rails. Straps over unit shall not be used to secure unit for shipping.

6. Exterior Corrosion Protection: Exterior cabinet panels shall be a base coat of G-90 galvanized steel with exterior surfaces cleaned, phosphatized and finished with a weather-resistant baked enamel finish. Unit's surface shall be in compliance with ASTM B117 salt spray testing at a minimum of 2,500-hour duration.
7. Interior Corrosion Protection: Interior surfaces shall be G90 galvanized steel. Cabinet shall include interior liner constructed of G90 galvanized steel with sealed seams. All Unit Coils shall be coated. See coil coating requirements below.
8. Cabinet construction shall provide hinged panels providing easy access for all parts requiring routine service.
9. Cabinet top cover shall be one piece construction or where seams exist, it shall be double-hemmed and gasket-sealed.
10. Hinged Access Panels: Water- and air-tight hinged access panels shall provide access to all areas requiring routine service including air filters, heating section, electrical and control cabinet sections, ERV and power exhaust fan section, supply air fan section, evaporator and reheat coil sections. Insulated doors shall be constructed to allow the hinges to be reversed in the field.
  - a. Hold-open devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access doors. Chains shall not be used as hold-open devices.
  - b. Latches with locking hasp or tool operated closure devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access panels.
11. Drain Pan material shall be Type 304 Stainless steel drain and constructed to sloped in two directions to ensure positive drainage with corners exposed to standing water and drain fittings welded liquid tight to prevent leaks. Pan shall have a minimum depth of 2". Base of drain pan shall be insulated with 1" thick foam insulation.
12. Provide openings either on side of unit or thru the base for power, control and gas connections.
13. Unit shall be equipped with a 6" filter rack upstream of the evaporator. Frame shall be field-adjustable to match any filter combination specified in the following section.

E. SUPPLY/100% EXHAUST - FANS AND MOTORS

1. Supply and Exhaust Fans shall be high efficiency backward curved impeller.
2. All Fan motors shall be VFD rated and controlled via factory mounted VFDs for variable motor speed. (4 HP Fan motors shall be an (ECM) electronic commutated motor with integrated power electronics for variable motor speed.)
3. Provide shafts constructed of solid hot rolled steel, ground and polished, with keyway, and protectively coated with lubricating oil.
4. Exhaust Fans shall be capable of providing air flow at design energy recovery scheduled values, and at airflow equal to supply scheduled values in economizer mode.

F. AIR FILTERS

1. Evaporator Inlet shall include a full complement of pleated media air filters. Filters shall be:

- a. 2" deep MERV 8
  - b. 4" deep MERV 13
2. Energy Recovery wheel exhaust side shall include a full complement of pleated media air filters. Filters shall be:
  - a. 2" deep MERV 8

#### G. DAMPERS

1. Unit shall include a motor operated outdoor air damper constructed of galvanized steel.
2. Damper blades shall be air foil design with rubber edge seals designed not to exceed a 4 CFM/SQ FT leakage rate exceeding ASHRAE 90.1 damper leakage requirements.
3. Damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring return and either two-position or fully modulating.
4. Return/Recirculate Air damper shall be of same material, construction, and leakage rate as outdoor air damper. Return air damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring fully modulating and operate based on outdoor air damper feedback signal to properly regulate RA airflow.

#### H. DEHUMIDIFICATION/COOLING

1. Compressors
  - a. Provide modulating scroll type compressors.
  - b. Motor shall be suction gas-cooled and shall have a voltage utilization range of plus or minus 10 percent of unit nameplate voltage.
  - c. Internal overloads shall be provided with the scroll compressors.
  - d. Each compressor shall have a crankcase heater to minimize the amount of liquid refrigerant present in the oil sump during off cycles.
  - e. Each compressor shall be mounted on rubber vibration isolators, to reduce the transmission of noise.
  - f. Provide each unit with two hermetically sealed independent refrigerant circuits factory-supplied completely piped with liquid line filter-drier, liquid line charging port, suction and liquid line pressure ports, sight glass, and thermal expansion valve.
  - g. Shall have a minimum of two (2) independent refrigerant circuits, a modulating scroll compressor to provide modulating capacity between 5% and 100% of capacity. Hot gas bypass is not permitted.
  - h. Compressors must be able to provide mechanical cooling down to 55 F ambient while maintaining DX Cooling Coil Leaving Air Dew Point at a constant 50 F, and be able to provide 70 degree reheat via HGRH.
  - i. Provide each circuit with automatic reset high and low pressure and high temperature switches for safety control.
2. Coils

- a. Evaporator, Condenser and Hot Gas Reheat coils shall be constructed with copper tubes mechanically bonded to configured aluminum plate fins or all aluminum tubes that are mechanical brazed to enhanced aluminum fins.
  - b. Coils shall be factory leak tested in accordance ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1992 at a minimum pressure of 500 PSIG.
  - c. The condenser coil shall have a fin designed for ease of cleaning.
  - d. Evaporator coil shall include (six / four) rows of cooling interlaced for superior sensible and latent cooling with a maximum of 12 FPI for ease of cleaning.
  - e. Reheat coil shall be fully integrated into the supply airstream and be capable of delivering design supply air temperature.
  - f. To prevent re-hydration of condensate from evaporator coil, the evaporator coil face and the hot gas reheat coil face shall be separated by a minimum of six inches.
  - g. Coil Coating for condenser, evaporator, HGRH coils: Coil will have a flexible epoxy polymer e-coat uniformly applied to all coil surface areas with no material bridging between fins. The coating process will ensure complete coil encapsulation and a uniform dry film thickness from 0.6 – 1.2 mills on all surface areas including fin edges and meet 5b rating cross hatched adhesion per ASTM B3359- 93. Corrosion durability will be confirmed through testing with no less than 6,000 hours salt spray resistance per ASTM B117-90 using scribed aluminum test school coupons.
  - h. Condenser coil hail guards shall be factory installed.
3. Condenser Section
- a. Outdoor Fans: Shall be direct drive vertical discharge design with low-noise corrosion resistant glass reinforced polypropylene props, powder coated wire discharge guards and electro-plated motor mounting brackets.
  - b. Fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced, draw through in the vertical discharge position.
4. Compressor Capacity Control – Modulating SCROLL COMPRESSORS
- a. Mechanical Control: shall be equipped with modulating Scroll Compressors to modulate compressor capacity during part load dehumidification while providing simultaneous hot gas reheat capacity at all ambient and load conditions. The dehumidification/cooling setpoint shall be maintained at all times, as well as the reheat set point. Cycling compressor capacity or sacrificing dehumidification requirements is not an acceptable control strategy.

#### I. INDIRECT-FIRED GAS FURNACE HEATING

- a. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; and complying with ANSI Z21.47 and with NFPA 54.
- b. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- c. Burners:

- 1) Heat-Exchanger Material: Stainless steel.
  - 2) Fuel: Propane gas.
  - 3) Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark with flame sensor.
  - 4) Gas Control Valve: Electronic modulating.
  - 5) Gas Train: Single body, regulated, redundant, 24 V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.
- d. Venting, Power: Power vented, with integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.
- e. Heat-Exchanger Drain Pan: Stainless steel.
- f. Safety Controls:
- 1) Gas Manifold: Safety switches and controls complying with ANSI standards
  - 2) Vent Flow Verification: Differential pressure switch to verify open vent
  - 3) High Limit: Thermal switch or fuse to stop burner.
  - 4) Purge-period timer shall automatically delay burner ignition and bypass low-limit control.
  - 5) Airflow Proving Switch: Differential pressure switch senses correct airflow before energizing pilot.
  - 6) Automatic-Reset, High-Limit Control Device: Stops burner and closes main gas valve if high-limit temperature is exceeded.
  - 7) Safety Lockout Switch: Locks out ignition sequence if burner fails to light after three tries. Controls are reset manually by turning the unit off and on.

#### J.ELECTRICAL RATINGS AND CONNECTIONS

1. All high voltage power components such as fuses, switches and contactors shall include a service personnel protection barrier or shall be a listed as touch-safe design.
2. Field wiring access to be provided thru unit base into isolated enclosure with removable cover.
3. Power wiring to be single point connection to a factory installed circuit breaker disconnect.
4. Wiring internal to the unit shall be colored and numbered for identification.
5. Unit shall be factory wired to field wiring terminal block mounted in isolated enclosure.
6. Factory wired main power circuit breaker disconnect and overcurrent device shall be rated for total unit connected power.
7. SCCR rating shall be a minimum of 65kA.
8. Factory wired Voltage/Phase monitor shall be included as standard. In the event of any of the following, the units will be shut down and a fault code will be stored in the monitor for the most recent 25 faults. Upon correction of the fault condition the unit will reset and restart automatically.

- a. Phase Unbalance Protection: Factory set 2%
  - b. Over/Under/Brown Out Voltage Protection: +/-10% of nameplate voltage
  - c. Phase Loss/Reversal
  - d. Single Phase Protection
9. Factory to mount and wire optional 120-volt convenience outlet. Field wiring of convenience outlet not acceptable.
  10. All low voltage field wiring connections shall be made at factory installed low voltage terminal strip.

K. UNIT CONTROLS

1. Main Unit Controller (MCM) shall be provided by CMI. (There shall be no control interface devices, no integration, no BacNet, and no controllers provided by the DOAS manufacturer.) DOAS manufacturer shall provide and factory install the following control end devices and wire all to a terminal strip, with no controller and no interface:
2. Space must be provided downstream of the unit's cooling coil for placement of the averaging temperature sensor, such that the unit can be controlled to the coil's leaving air set point, continuously. Controlling the unit indirectly via suction temp or any other indirect control algorithm is not acceptable.
  - a. Primary control shall be Discharge Air Control via cooling coil leaving air temperature sensor.
3. Factory Mounted and Wired Control Devices:
  - a. Unit Manufacturer shall provide, factory install, and wire the following control points to terminal strip for CMI (Controls interface shall not be permitted):
    - 1) Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor
    - 2) Outdoor Air Humidity Sensor
    - 3) Outdoor Air Flow Measuring Station
    - 4) Outdoor Air Modulating Damper and Actuator
    - 5) Outdoor Air Total Energy Wheel Modulating Bypass Damper and Actuator
    - 6) Exhaust Air Total Energy Wheel Modulating Bypass Damper and Actuator
    - 7) Total Energy Wheel Enable
    - 8) Return Air/Mixed Air Modulating Damper and Actuator
    - 9) Return Air Temperature Sensor
    - 10) Return Air Humidity Sensor
    - 11) Return Air Duct Pressure Sensor
    - 12) Filter Differential Pressure Switch – Status
    - 13) Exhaust Fan Piezometer Air Flow Station
    - 14) Exhaust Fan ECM Variable Speed Fan Control
    - 15) Exhaust Damper and Actuator

- 16) Exhaust Damper End Switch
  - 17) Exhaust Air Temperature Sensor
  - 18) 0-10 vDc Input for Single/Dual Digital Compressor Capacity Modulation
  - 19) Evaporator Leaving Air Temperature Sensor
  - 20) 0-10 vDc Input for Hot Gas Reheat Modulation
  - 21) Supply Fan Status
  - 22) Supply Fan Piezometer Air Flow Measuring Station
  - 23) Supply Fan ECM Variable Speed Fan Control
  - 24) Unit Leaving Air Temperature Sensor for Discharge Air Temperature.
- b. CMI shall furnish Space Temperature, Space Humidity and Co2 sensor(s) for field installation and connection to the CMI provided controller.
  - c. Discharge Air Sensor: Provided with Unit, field installed by CMI.
4. System controls shall include:
    - a. Anti-cycle timing.
    - b. Minimum compressor run/off-times.

L. POWER EXHAUST – WITH ISOLATION DAMPER

1. Provide a factory installed power exhaust assembly that shall be designed to ventilate return air to atmosphere.
2. Plenum mounted direct drive airfoil design exhaust wheel material shall be heavy gauge aluminum, welded construction and rated for up to Class III speed/pressure performance.
3. Exhaust to discharge through gravity dampers located on each side of unit cabinet.

M. OUTDOOR AIR SECTION ENERGY RECOVERY (ERV)

1. The rotor media shall be made of aluminum substrate, formed into a honeycomb structure to minimize pressure loss and avoid plugging or polymer film matrix. The rotor media must be coated to resist corrosion. All surfaces must be coated with a non-migrating desiccant layer to ensure that adequate latent capacity is provided. The desiccant coating must be firmly bonded to the aluminum surface and will not be dislodged when challenged with high velocity air up to 5000 feet per minute. Products that lose desiccant when served with high velocity air are not acceptable. The cassette must be a slide out design for serviceability. The media shall be cleanable with low temperature steam, hot water, or light detergent without degrading the latent recovery.
2. Sensible and latent recovery efficiencies must be clearly documented through a testing program conducted in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 84 and AHRI 1060. The testing must have been conducted by a qualified independent organization. The performance test reports must be provided for engineering review as part of the submittals for this project.
3. The rotor design shall ensure laminar airflow to minimize parasitic pressure loss and to optimize the operating efficiency of the system fans. The pressure loss across the



media shall be no greater than the scheduled pressure loss values. The energy wheel shall operate effectively up to 180 degrees F.

4. The wheel manufacturer must have been producing energy recovery wheels for a minimum of ten years.
5. The rotor shall be supplied with perimeter brush seals and face contact seals to minimize air leakage and wheel bypass.
6. The rotor media shall be supported by a structural aluminum hub and aluminum reinforcing spoke system. The rotor bearings must be greaseable and provide L10 life in excess of 20 years.
7. The cassette framework shall be made of galvanized steel to prevent corrosion.
8. The rotor must be driven by long-life polyurethane/polyester composite link belt system. The rotor/cassette shall be designed so that belt can be removed or serviced without the removal of the bearing. A 3 phase A/C gear motor shall be utilized to accommodate variable speed applications.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 1. EXAMINATION

- a. Examine areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- b. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- c. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- d. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 2. INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- a. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural slabs on grade.
- b. Provide filters with a minimum MERV 13 rating for air delivered to the occupied space.
- c. Air-handling units should not be used for temporary heating and ventilating unless expressly approved by Owner. If used during construction, see SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction" for procedures to protect HVAC system.
- d. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- e. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

- f. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.
- g. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.
- h. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3. PIPING CONNECTIONS

- a. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections.
- b. Duct Connections:
  - 1) Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
  - 2) Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
  - 3) Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 4. ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- a. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- b. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- c. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- d. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1) Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2) Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 2 inches high. Indicate Panel and Circuit Number on Nameplate

### 5. CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- a. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

### 6. STARTUP SERVICE

- a. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1) Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.

- 3) Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits. and measure and record the following:
    - a) Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - b) Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - c) Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
    - d) Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
  - 4) Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
    - a) Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
    - b) Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
  - 5) Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
  - 6) Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 7) Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  - 8) Verify that filters are installed.
  - 9) Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
  - 10) Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
  - 11) Verify bearing lubrication.
  - 12) Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  - 13) Start unit.
  - 14) Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices, including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
  - 15) Operate unit for run-in period.
  - 16) Calibrate controls.
  - 17) Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
  - 18) Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
  - 19) Verify operational sequence of controls.
  - 20) Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
    - a) Supply-air volume.
    - b) Relief-air flow.
    - c) Outdoor-air flow.
- b. After startup, change filters and verify bearing lubrication.
  - c. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate, and repeat startup procedures as specified above.
  - d. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

## 7. ADJUSTING

- a. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

- b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- c. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

#### 8. CLEANING

- a. After completing system installation; testing, adjusting, and balancing dedicated outdoor-air unit and air-distribution systems; and completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, casings, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

#### 9. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- a. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- b. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- c. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1) Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
  - 2) Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

#### 10. DEMONSTRATION

- a. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

### B. MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- 1. Unit start-up shall be completed by an Employee of the Factory and must be a factory-certified technician.
  - a. Manufacturer must have factory-authorized and factory-trained technicians within a 50-mile radius of job site.
- 2. The contractor shall furnish manufacturer complete submittal wiring diagrams of the package unit as applicable for field maintenance and service.

END OF SECTION 237413

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- D. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
  2. Type XHHW: Comply with UL 44.
- E. Multiconductor Cable: Type AC with ground wire.
1. Comply with UL 4.
- 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES
- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.
- 2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS
- A. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.
- 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS
- A. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
- A. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

- B. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches of slack.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
    - a. All air handling equipment.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

- a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
- 1. Procedures used.
  - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- D. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 260519



## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## 2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- C. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- D. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

#### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 3. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 4. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 5. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
- C. Water Heater: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

- C. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
- D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
  - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- C. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- D. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- E. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
  - 2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel or die cast.
    - b. Type: Setscrew or compression.

3. Expansion Fittings: Steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- F. Joint Compound for GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum or galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- D. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- E. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- F. Cabinets:
  1. NEMA 250, Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
  3. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.

2. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  4. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
  5. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- E. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- H. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

- I. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- J. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- K. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- L. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- M. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- N. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- P. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Q. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- R. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
- S. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to top of box unless otherwise indicated.
- T. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.

- U. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- V. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- W. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533



## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Warning labels and signs.
4. Instruction signs.
5. Equipment identification labels.
6. Miscellaneous identification products.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 POWER AND CONTROL RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- C. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.
- B. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.3 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.
- C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

## 2.4 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.
  - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

## 2.6 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  - 4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

- E. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

END OF SECTION 260553